

# SIEMENS

## SIMATIC HMI

### HMI device MP 370 (WinCC flexible)

#### Operating Instructions

Order No. 6AV6691-1DE01-0AB0

Edition 03/2004

A5E00280680-01



Everything for your HMI running

✉ sales@vicpas.com

☎ +86-15876525394

#### Preface

---

#### Overview

---

1

#### Safety notes and general information

---

2

#### Plan deployment

---

3

#### Installation and connection

---

4

#### Operating elements and indicators

---

5

#### Operating system and configuration

---

6

#### Prepare and backup project

---

7

#### Runtime functionalities of a project

---

8

#### Operating a project

---

9

#### Operating recipes

---

10

#### Maintenance/Service

---

11

#### Technical Specifications

---

12

#### Appendix

---

A

#### Abbreviations

---

B

#### Glossary

---

C

## Safety Guidelines

This manual contains notices which you should observe to ensure your own personal safety as well as to avoid property damage. The notices referring to your personal safety are highlighted in the manual by a safety alert symbol, notices referring to property damage only have no safety alert symbol.



---

### Danger

indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

---



---

### Warning

indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

---



---

### Caution

used with the safety alert symbol indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury.

---

---

### Caution

used without safety alert symbol indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in property damage.

---

---

### Notice

used without the safety alert symbol indicates a potential situation which, if not avoided, may result in an undesirable result or state.

---

When several danger levels apply, the notices of the highest level (lower number) are always displayed. If a notice refers to personal damages with the safety alert symbol, then another notice may be added warning of property damage.

## Qualified Personnel

The device/system may only be set up and operated in conjunction with this documentation. Only qualified personnel should be allowed to install and work on the equipment. Qualified persons are defined as persons who are authorized to commission, to earth, and to tag circuits, equipment and systems in accordance with established safety practices and standards.

## Intended Use

Please note the following:



---

### Warning

This device and its components may only be used for the applications described in the catalog or technical description, and only in connection with devices or components from other manufacturers approved or recommended by Siemens.

This product can only function correctly and safely if it is transported, stored, set up and installed correctly, and operated and maintained as recommended.

---

## Trademarks

All designations marked with ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG. Other designations in this documentation might be trademarks which, if used by third parties for their purposes, might infringe upon the rights of the proprietors.

(A )

가

### Copyright Siemens AG, 2004. All rights reserved

Reproduction, transmission or use of this document or its contents is not permitted without express written authority. Offenders will be liable for damages. All rights, including rights created by patent grant or registration of a utility model or design, are reserved.

### Disclaimer of Liability

We have checked the contents of this manual for agreement with the hardware and software described. Since deviations cannot be precluded entirely, we cannot guarantee full agreement. However, the data in the manual are reviewed regularly, and any necessary corrections will be included in subsequent editions. Suggestions for improvement are welcomed.

Siemens AG  
Automation and Drives Group  
P.O. Box 4848, D-90327 Nuremberg (Germany)

004  
Subject to change

Siemens Aktiengesellschaft

  
Everything for your HMI running  
✉ sales@vicpas.com  
☎ +86-15876525394

1-0AB0

# Preface

## Purpose of this manual

This manual provides information based on the requirements defined by DIN 8418 regarding mechanical engineering documentation. This information relates to the device, its place of use, transport, storage, installation, use and maintenance.

This manual is intended for the following target groups:

- User
- Commissioning engineers
- Service technicians
- Maintenance technicians

Please read carefully the section "Safety information and general notes".

The help integrated in WinCC flexible, the WinCC flexible Information System, contains detailed information. The Information System contains instructions, examples and reference information in electronic form.

## Basic knowledge required

A general knowledge of automation technology and process communication is necessary in order to understand the manual.

It is assumed users have good basic knowledge on the use of personal computers and MS Windows operating systems.

## Area of validity

The manual applies to SIMATIC MP 370 in connection with the WinCC flexible 2004 software packet.

## What's new since the 09/2002 release?

This manual describes the use of the HMI device in combination with WinCC flexible 2004.

The 09/2002 version is still valid for use of the HMI device with ProTool.

## Its place in the information landscape

This manual is part of the SIMATIC HMI documentation. The information below presents an overview of the information landscape of SIMATIC HMI.

### User manual

- WinCC flexible Micro

- Describes basics of configuration using the WinCC flexible Micro engineering system.
- WinCC flexible Compact/Standard/Advanced:
  - Describes basic principles of configuration using the WinCC flexible Compact Engineering System/WinCC flexible Standard/WinCC flexible Advanced
- WinCC flexible Runtime:
  - Describes how to commission and operate your Runtime project on a PC.
- WinCC flexible Migration:
  - Describes how to migrate an existing ProTool project to WinCC flexible.
  - Describes how to migrate an existing WinCC project to WinCC flexible.
  - Describes the conversion of ProTool projects together with changing the HMI device from OP7 to OP 77B.
  - Describes the conversion of ProTool projects with a change in the HMI device from a graphics device to a Windows CE device.
- Communication:
  - Communication Part 1 describes the connection of the HMI device to SIMATIC PLCs.
  - Communication part 2 describes the integration of the HMI device into control systems of third-party suppliers.

#### Operating instructions

- Operating instructions for the SIMATIC OP 77B, TP 170micro/TP 170A/TP 170B/OP 170B, SIMATIC Mobile Panel 170, SIMATIC TP 270/OP 270/MP 270B, and SIMATIC MP 370 HMI devices.
- Quick reference manuals for the SIMATIC OP 77B and SIMATIC Mobile Panel 170 HMI devices.

#### Getting started

- WinCC flexible for newcomers:
  - Based on a practical example, this is a step-by-step introduction to the basics of configuring screens, alarms, recipes and screen navigation.
- WinCC flexible for advanced users:
  - Based on a practical sample project, this is a step-by-step introduction to the basics of engineering log files, project reports, scripts, user management, multilingual projects and integration into STEP 7.
- WinCC flexible Options:
  - Based on a practical sample project, this is a step-by-step introduction to the basics of configuring the options WinCC flexible Sm@rtServices, Sm@rtAccess and OPC Server.

#### Online availability

The following links provide direct access to technical documentation on SIMATIC products and systems in English, German, French, Italian, and Spanish.

- SIMATIC Guide for Technical Documentation in German:  
[http://www.ad.siemens.de/simatic/portal/html\\_00/techdoku.htm](http://www.ad.siemens.de/simatic/portal/html_00/techdoku.htm)
- SIMATIC Guide for Technical Documentation in English:  
[http://www.ad.siemens.de/simatic/portal/html\\_76/techdoku.htm](http://www.ad.siemens.de/simatic/portal/html_76/techdoku.htm)



## Conventions

A distinction was made in naming configuration and runtime software:

- "WinCC flexible" refers to the configuration software.
- "Runtime" refers to the runtime software that can be executed on HMI devices.

The term "WinCC flexible" is used in the general context. A version name such as "WinCC flexible 2004" is always used when it is necessary to distinguish it from other versions.

The following conventions are intended to facilitate easy reading:

| Layout        | Range of validity   |
|---------------|---|
| "Add screen"  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Terminology of the user interface, e.g. dialog names, tabs, buttons, menu commands.</li> <li>• Input required, e.g. limit values, tag values.</li> <li>• Path specification</li> </ul> |
| "File ? Edit" | Operating sequence, e.g. menu / context menu commands.  |
| <F1>, <Alt+P> | Keyboard operation  |

Please observe the following emphasized notes:

---

### Note

Notes containing important information about the product and its use or a specific section of the documentation to which you should pay particular attention.

---

## Trademarks

All names designated with an ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG.

|                         |
|-------------------------|
| HMI®                    |
| SIMATIC®                |
| SIMATIC HMI®            |
| SIMATIC ProTool®        |
| SIMATIC WinCC®          |
| SIMATIC WinCC flexible® |
| SIMATIC MP 370®         |

The remaining product names in this publication may be trademarks and the use of these names by third parties for their own purposes may violate the rights of the owner.

## Further support

### Representatives and offices

If you have any further questions relating to the products described in this manual, please contact your local representative at the SIEMENS branch nearest you.

You local representative can be found under:  
<http://www.siemens.com/automation/partner>

### Training center

We offer relevant courses to simplify your introduction to the world of automation systems. Please contact your regional training center, or the central training center in D-90327 Nuremberg.

Phone: +49 (911) 895-3200

Internet: <http://www.siemens.com/simatic>

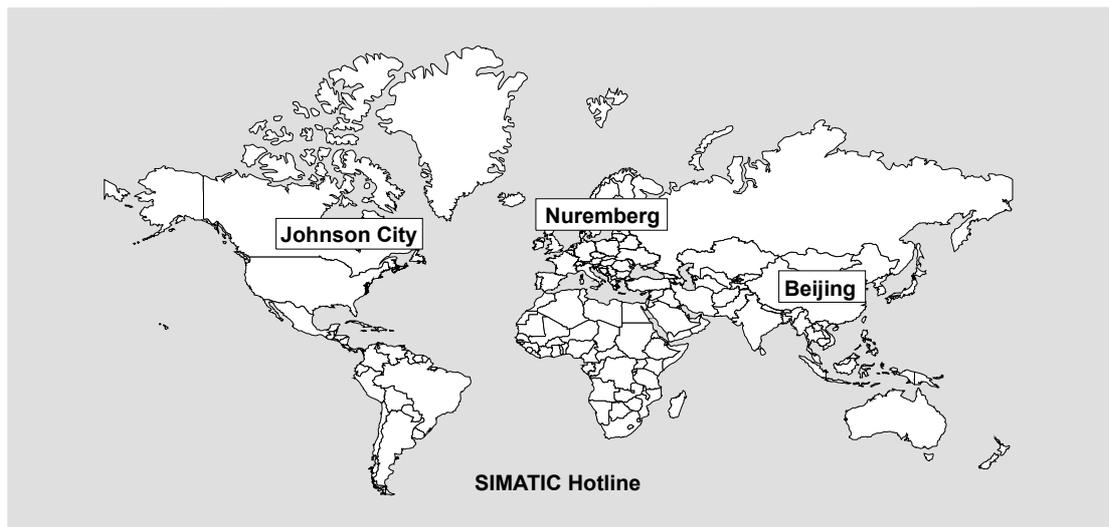
### Service & Support on the Internet

Service & Support offers comprehensive information on SIMATIC products online at "<http://www.siemens.com/automation/service&support>":

- The newsletter keeps you up-to-date with information relating to your products.
- Our Service & Support search engine provides you with abundant documentation.
- A bulletin board where users and experts exchange their knowledge worldwide.
- Current product information, FAQs and downloads.
- Your local contact for Automation & Drives.
- Information about on-site services, repairs, spare parts and much more is available on our "Services" pages.

### A&D Technical Support and Authorization

Available 24 hours worldwide:



---

**Worldwide (Nuremberg)**  
**Technical Support**  
(Free Contact)

**Worldwide (Nuremberg)**  
**Technical Support**  
(fee-based, only with Automation Value Card)

---

|  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| Local time:<br>Mon.–Fri. 07:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. | Local time:<br>0:00 to 24:00, 365 days          |   |
| Telephone:<br>+49 (0) 180 5050-222               | Telephone:<br>+49 (911) 895-7777                |   |
| Fax:<br>+49 (0) 180 5050-223                     | Fax:<br>+49 (911) 895-7001                      |   |
| E-Mail:<br>adsupport@siemens.com                 | E-mail: –                                       |   |
| GMT: +1:00                                       | GMT: +1:00                                      |   |
| <b>Europe/Africa</b> (Nuremberg)                 | <b>America</b> (Johnson City)                   | <b>Asia/Pacific</b> (Beijing)                   |
| <b>Authorization</b>                             | <b>Technical Support and Authorization</b>      | <b>Technical Support and Authorization</b>      |
| Local time:<br>Mon.–Fri. 07:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. | Local time:<br>Mon.–Fri. 8:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m. | Local time:<br>Mon.–Fri. 8:30 a.m. to 5:30 p.m. |
| Telephone:<br>+49 (911) 895-7200                 | Telephone:<br>+1 423 461-2522                   | Telephone:<br>+86 (10) 64 75 75 75              |
| Fax:<br>+49 (911) 895-7201                       | Fax:<br>+1 423 461-2289                         | Fax:<br>+86 (10) 64 74 74 74                    |
| E-Mail:<br>adauthorisierung@siemens.com          | E-Mail:<br>simatic.hotline@sea.siemens.com      | E-mail:<br>adsupport.asia@siemens.com           |
| GMT: +1:00                                       | GMT: –5:00                                      | GMT: +8:00                                      |

Information is available in German and English.



Everything for your HMI running  
✉ sales@vicpas.com  
☎ +86-15876525394

MP 370 (WinCC flexible)  
structions, Edition 03/2004, 6AV6691-1DE01-0AB0

# Table of contents

|          |   |            |
|----------|---|------------|
|          | Preface .....   | i          |
| <b>1</b> | <b>Overview.....</b>                                  | <b>1-1</b> |
| 1.1      | Multi Panel MP 370.....                               | 1-1        |
| 1.2      | Area of use.....                                      | 1-2        |
| 1.3      | Configuring with WinCC flexible.....                  | 1-3        |
| 1.4      | Features .....  | 1-4        |
| 1.5      | Functional scope .....                                | 1-5        |
| 1.6      | Communication with PLCs.....                          | 1-8        |
| 1.7      | Options.....  | 1-9        |
| 1.7.1    | Hardware options.....                                 | 1-9        |
| 1.7.1.1  | Backup battery .....                                  | 1-9        |
| 1.7.1.2  | PC card / CF card .....                               | 1-10       |
| 1.7.2    | Software options .....                                | 1-12       |
| 1.7.2.1  | Internet Explorer .....                               | 1-12       |
| <b>2</b> | <b>Safety notes and general information .....</b>     | <b>2-1</b> |
| 2.1      | Safety notes .....                                    | 2-1        |
| 2.2      | General information .....                             | 2-1        |
| <b>3</b> | <b>Plan deployment.....</b>                           | <b>3-1</b> |
| 3.1      | Transport.....  | 3-1        |
| 3.2      | Electromagnetic compatibility .....                   | 3-1        |
| 3.3      | Installation locations and type of protection.....    | 3-3        |
| 3.4      | Producing the installation cut-out.....               | 3-4        |
| <b>4</b> | <b>Installation and connection .....</b>              | <b>4-1</b> |
| 4.1      | Check shipment .....                                  | 4-1        |
| 4.2      | Installation of the HMI device.....                   | 4-1        |
| 4.2.1    | Installation of the touch panel unit .....            | 4-2        |
| 4.3      | Connecting the HMI device.....                        | 4-3        |
| 4.3.1    | Conditions .....                                      | 4-3        |
| 4.3.2    | Interfaces .....                                      | 4-4        |
| 4.3.3    | Connecting the potential equalization.....            | 4-6        |
| 4.3.4    | Connecting peripheral equipment.....                  | 4-7        |
| 4.3.4.1  | Connect printer.....                                  | 4-7        |
| 4.3.4.2  | Connect external keyboard and mouse.....              | 4-9        |
| 4.3.5    | Connecting the PLC.....                               | 4-11       |
| 4.3.6    | Connecting the configuration computer .....           | 4-13       |
| 4.3.7    | Connecting an uninterruptible power supply (UPS)..... | 4-14       |
| 4.3.8    | Connecting the power supply.....                      | 4-15       |

|          |   |            |
|----------|---|------------|
| 4.4      | Switch on and test the HMI device.....                | 4-16       |
| <b>5</b> | <b>Operating elements and indicators .....</b>        | <b>5-1</b> |
| 5.1      | Front view MP 370 Touch .....                         | 5-1        |
| 5.2      | Front view MP 370 Key .....                           | 5-2        |
| 5.2.1    | Key pads .....  | 5-2        |
| 5.2.2    | Function keys .....                                   | 5-4        |
| 5.2.3    | System keys .....                                     | 5-5        |
| 5.2.4    | Labeling the softkeys .....                           | 5-6        |
| 5.3      | Operation with external keyboard/mouse .....          | 5-9        |
| <b>6</b> | <b>Operating system and configuration .....</b>       | <b>6-1</b> |
| 6.1      | HMI device loader .....                               | 6-1        |
| 6.2      | Windows CE Control Panel.....                         | 6-2        |
| 6.2.1    | Open Control Panel.....                               | 6-2        |
| 6.2.2    | Communication .....                                   | 6-5        |
| 6.2.3    | Date/Time.....  | 6-5        |
| 6.2.4    | Input panel .....                                     | 6-6        |
| 6.2.5    | Network .....   | 6-6        |
| 6.2.6    | OP .....  | 6-7        |
| 6.2.7    | Printer.....  | 6-10       |
| 6.2.8    | Regional Settings.....                                | 6-13       |
| 6.2.9    | Screen Saver .....                                    | 6-13       |
| 6.2.10   | System .....  | 6-15       |
| 6.2.11   | UPS.....  | 6-16       |
| 6.2.12   | Volume & Sounds .....                                 | 6-17       |
| 6.3      | Network operation .....                               | 6-17       |
| 6.3.1    | Basic principles .....                                | 6-17       |
| 6.3.2    | Configuring the HMI device for network operation..... | 6-18       |
| 6.3.3    | Test network.....                                     | 6-20       |
| 6.3.4    | Configuring network access.....                       | 6-21       |
| <b>7</b> | <b>Prepare and backup project.....</b>                | <b>7-1</b> |
| 7.1      | Transfer project to the HMI device.....               | 7-1        |
| 7.1.1    | Commissioning for the first time.....                 | 7-1        |
| 7.1.2    | Recommissioning.....                                  | 7-3        |
| 7.2      | Transfer.....   | 7-3        |
| 7.2.1    | Start transfer manually .....                         | 7-3        |
| 7.2.2    | Start transfer automatically .....                    | 7-4        |
| 7.2.3    | Transfer mode options .....                           | 7-5        |
| 7.2.4    | Testing the project.....                              | 7-8        |
| 7.2.5    | Uploading project .....                               | 7-10       |
| 7.3      | System settings.....                                  | 7-12       |
| 7.3.1    | Set language .....                                    | 7-12       |
| 7.3.2    | Set operating mode.....                               | 7-13       |
| 7.4      | Other transfer functions.....                         | 7-14       |
| 7.4.1    | Functions.....  | 7-14       |
| 7.4.2    | Backup and Restore.....                               | 7-15       |
| 7.4.3    | Update operating system .....                         | 7-18       |
| 7.4.4    | Transferring authorizations .....                     | 7-20       |
| 7.4.5    | Transferring options .....                            | 7-22       |
| <b>8</b> | <b>Runtime functionalities of a project.....</b>      | <b>8-1</b> |

|          |   |            |
|----------|---|------------|
| 8.1      | Screen objects .....                    | 8-1        |
| 8.2      | Alarms .....                            | 8-2        |
| 8.3      | Tags .....                              | 8-3        |
| 8.4      | Logs .....                              | 8-3        |
| 8.5      | Reports.....                            | 8-5        |
| 8.6      | System functions and scripts .....      | 8-6        |
| 8.7      | Safety .....                            | 8-7        |
| 8.8      | Other operating functions.....          | 8-8        |
| <b>9</b> | <b>Operating a project .....</b>        | <b>9-1</b> |
| 9.1      | Basic principles of operation .....     | 9-1        |
| 9.1.1    | Basics for operation in Runtime .....   | 9-1        |
| 9.1.2    | Operating the touch panel (TP).....     | 9-2        |
| 9.1.2.1  | Operating touch objects .....           | 9-2        |
| 9.1.2.2  | Input of values.....                    | 9-4        |
| 9.1.2.3  | Input of numeric values.....            | 9-5        |
| 9.1.2.4  | Input of alphanumeric values.....       | 9-5        |
| 9.1.2.5  | Calling the operator note.....          | 9-6        |
| 9.1.3    | Operating a keyboard device.....        | 9-7        |
| 9.1.3.1  | Functions of the system keys.....       | 9-7        |
| 9.1.3.2  | Functions of the key combinations.....  | 9-9        |
| 9.1.3.3  | Calling the operator note.....          | 9-11       |
| 9.2      | Controlling graphic objects.....        | 9-13       |
| 9.2.1    | Button .....                            | 9-13       |
| 9.2.1.1  | Description .....                       | 9-13       |
| 9.2.1.2  | Touch control .....                     | 9-13       |
| 9.2.1.3  | Keyboard control .....                  | 9-13       |
| 9.2.1.4  | Mouse and keyboard control.....         | 9-14       |
| 9.2.2    | Switch.....                             | 9-14       |
| 9.2.2.1  | Description .....                       | 9-14       |
| 9.2.2.2  | Touch control .....                     | 9-15       |
| 9.2.2.3  | Keyboard control .....                  | 9-15       |
| 9.2.2.4  | Mouse and keyboard control.....         | 9-15       |
| 9.2.3    | I/O field .....                         | 9-16       |
| 9.2.3.1  | Description .....                       | 9-16       |
| 9.2.3.2  | Touch control .....                     | 9-16       |
| 9.2.3.3  | Keyboard control .....                  | 9-17       |
| 9.2.3.4  | Operation with mouse and keyboard ..... | 9-17       |
| 9.2.4    | Graphic I/O field .....                 | 9-18       |
| 9.2.4.1  | Description .....                       | 9-18       |
| 9.2.4.2  | Touch control .....                     | 9-18       |
| 9.2.4.3  | Keyboard control .....                  | 9-19       |
| 9.2.4.4  | Mouse and keyboard control.....         | 9-19       |
| 9.2.5    | Symbolic I/O field .....                | 9-20       |
| 9.2.5.1  | Description .....                       | 9-20       |
| 9.2.5.2  | Touch control .....                     | 9-20       |
| 9.2.5.3  | Keyboard control .....                  | 9-21       |
| 9.2.5.4  | Mouse and keyboard control.....         | 9-21       |
| 9.2.6    | Alarm indicator .....                   | 9-22       |
| 9.2.6.1  | Description .....                       | 9-22       |
| 9.2.6.2  | Touch control .....                     | 9-22       |
| 9.2.6.3  | Mouse control.....                      | 9-23       |
| 9.2.7    | Alarm view.....                         | 9-23       |

|          |                                 |      |
|----------|---------------------------------|------|
| 9.2.7.1  | Description .....               | 9-23 |
| 9.2.7.2  | Touch control .....             | 9-24 |
| 9.2.7.3  | Keyboard control .....          | 9-24 |
| 9.2.7.4  | Mouse and keyboard control..... | 9-25 |
| 9.2.8    | Simple alarm view .....         | 9-25 |
| 9.2.8.1  | Description .....               | 9-25 |
| 9.2.8.2  | Touch control .....             | 9-27 |
| 9.2.8.3  | Keyboard control .....          | 9-27 |
| 9.2.8.4  | Mouse and keyboard control..... | 9-28 |
| 9.2.9    | Recipe view .....               | 9-28 |
| 9.2.9.1  | Description .....               | 9-28 |
| 9.2.9.2  | Touch control .....             | 9-29 |
| 9.2.9.3  | Keyboard control .....          | 9-30 |
| 9.2.9.4  | Mouse and keyboard control..... | 9-30 |
| 9.2.10   | Simple recipe view .....        | 9-31 |
| 9.2.10.1 | Description .....               | 9-31 |
| 9.2.10.2 | Touch control .....             | 9-32 |
| 9.2.10.3 | Keyboard control .....          | 9-32 |
| 9.2.10.4 | Mouse and keyboard control..... | 9-33 |
| 9.2.11   | Bar .....                       | 9-34 |
| 9.2.12   | Trend view .....                | 9-35 |
| 9.2.12.1 | Description .....               | 9-35 |
| 9.2.12.2 | Touch control .....             | 9-36 |
| 9.2.12.3 | Keyboard control .....          | 9-36 |
| 9.2.12.4 | Mouse and keyboard control..... | 9-37 |
| 9.2.13   | Slider control .....            | 9-38 |
| 9.2.13.1 | Description .....               | 9-38 |
| 9.2.13.2 | Touch control .....             | 9-38 |
| 9.2.13.3 | Keyboard control .....          | 9-39 |
| 9.2.13.4 | Mouse and keyboard control..... | 9-39 |
| 9.2.14   | Gauge.....                      | 9-40 |
| 9.2.15   | Date / time field .....         | 9-41 |
| 9.2.15.1 | Description .....               | 9-41 |
| 9.2.15.2 | Touch control .....             | 9-41 |
| 9.2.15.3 | Keyboard control .....          | 9-41 |
| 9.2.15.4 | Mouse and keyboard control..... | 9-42 |
| 9.2.16   | Clock .....                     | 9-43 |
| 9.2.17   | User view .....                 | 9-44 |
| 9.2.17.1 | Description .....               | 9-44 |
| 9.2.17.2 | Touch control .....             | 9-45 |
| 9.2.17.3 | Keyboard control .....          | 9-45 |
| 9.2.17.4 | Mouse and keyboard control..... | 9-45 |
| 9.2.18   | Simple user view .....          | 9-46 |
| 9.2.18.1 | Description .....               | 9-46 |
| 9.2.18.2 | Touch control .....             | 9-46 |
| 9.2.18.3 | Keyboard control .....          | 9-46 |
| 9.2.18.4 | Mouse and keyboard control..... | 9-47 |
| 9.2.19   | Status force .....              | 9-48 |
| 9.2.19.1 | Description .....               | 9-48 |
| 9.2.19.2 | Touch control .....             | 9-49 |
| 9.2.19.3 | Keyboard control .....          | 9-49 |
| 9.2.19.4 | Mouse and keyboard control..... | 9-50 |
| 9.2.20   | Sm@rtClient view.....           | 9-51 |
| 9.2.20.1 | Description .....               | 9-51 |
| 9.2.20.2 | Touch control .....             | 9-53 |
| 9.2.20.3 | Keyboard control .....          | 9-53 |
| 9.2.20.4 | Mouse and keyboard control..... | 9-53 |

|           |  |             |
|-----------|--|-------------|
| 9.2.21    | Symbol library .....                                     | 9-54        |
| 9.2.21.1  | Description .....  | 9-54        |
| 9.2.21.2  | Touch control .....                                      | 9-55        |
| 9.2.21.3  | Mouse control.....                                       | 9-55        |
| <b>10</b> | <b>Operating recipes .....</b>                           | <b>10-1</b> |
| 10.1      | Recipes .....  | 10-1        |
| 10.2      | Structure of recipes.....                                | 10-3        |
| 10.3      | Structure of recipe data records.....                    | 10-4        |
| 10.4      | Recipe application.....                                  | 10-5        |
| 10.4.1    | Transfer of recipe data records.....                     | 10-5        |
| 10.4.2    | Configuration of recipes.....                            | 10-6        |
| 10.4.3    | Scenario: Entering recipe data records in Runtime .....  | 10-9        |
| 10.4.4    | Scenario: Manual production sequence .....               | 10-10       |
| 10.4.5    | Scenario: Automatic production sequence .....            | 10-11       |
| 10.5      | Displaying recipes.....                                  | 10-12       |
| 10.5.1    | Viewing and editing recipes in Runtime.....              | 10-12       |
| 10.5.2    | Behavior of the recipe view in Runtime .....             | 10-14       |
| 10.6      | Recipe data record administration .....                  | 10-14       |
| 10.6.1    | Recipe data record administration .....                  | 10-14       |
| 10.6.2    | Synchronizing a recipe data record .....                 | 10-16       |
| 10.6.3    | Read recipe data record from PLC .....                   | 10-17       |
| 10.6.4    | Transfer recipe record to PLC.....                       | 10-17       |
| 10.6.5    | Exporting and importing recipe data records .....        | 10-18       |
| 10.6.6    | Reactions to modifications of the recipe structure ..... | 10-19       |
| 10.7      | Example .....  | 10-20       |
| 10.7.1    | Example: Creating a recipe.....                          | 10-20       |
| 10.7.2    | Example: Configuring a recipe screen.....                | 10-21       |
| <b>11</b> | <b>Maintenance/Service .....</b>                         | <b>11-1</b> |
| 11.1      | Clean screen/keyboard foil .....                         | 11-1        |
| 11.1.1    | General information .....                                | 11-1        |
| 11.1.2    | Notes on the touch panel .....                           | 11-1        |
| 11.2      | Replacing the optional backup battery.....               | 11-2        |
| <b>12</b> | <b>Technical Specifications .....</b>                    | <b>12-1</b> |
| 12.1      | Dimension drawings.....                                  | 12-1        |
| 12.1.1    | Dimensions MP 370 12" Touch .....                        | 12-1        |
| 12.1.2    | Dimensions MP 370 15" Touch .....                        | 12-3        |
| 12.1.3    | Dimensions MP 370 12" Key .....                          | 12-4        |
| 12.2      | Technical specifications .....                           | 12-5        |
| 12.3      | EMC requirements .....                                   | 12-7        |
| 12.4      | Interface description.....                               | 12-8        |
| <b>A</b>  | <b>Appendix.....</b>                                     | <b>A-1</b>  |
| A.1       | Certificates and Directives .....                        | A-1         |
| A.1.1     | Approvals .....  | A-1         |
| A.1.2     | ESD guidelines .....                                     | A-2         |
| A.2       | System alarms .....                                      | A-4         |
| <b>B</b>  | <b>Abbreviations.....</b>                                | <b>B-1</b>  |

**C Glossary .....C-1**  
**Index**

**Tables**

|            |  |       |
|------------|--|-------|
| Table 1-1  | Communication with SIMATIC PLCs .....                  | 1-8   |
| Table 1-2  | Communication with PLCs from other manufacturers ..... | 1-9   |
| Table 12-1 | 15-pin Cannon connector.....                           | 12-8  |
| Table 12-2 | 9-pin Sub-D socket (configuration via switch).....     | 12-9  |
| Table 12-3 | 9-pin Sub-D plug (pin).....                            | 12-9  |
| Table 12-4 | RJ45 plug connection.....                              | 12-10 |
| Table 12-5 | USB standard plug .....                                | 12-10 |



# Overview

## 1.1 Multi Panel MP 370

### Multifunctional platform

The SIMATIC Multi Panels are included in the "Multifunctional Platform" product category. This product category is positioned in the product hierarchy between the process-related, optimized application components, such as operator panels and controllers, and industrial PCs. This sector is completed by the introduction of the MP 370 15" Touch device variant intended for high-end users.

The multifunctional platform is based on the innovative standard operating system, Microsoft Windows CE. It combines the robustness and speed of the dedicated hardware solutions with the flexibility of the PC world.

Multi Panels provide the following advantages:

- High degree of configuration efficiency
- Configuration simulation on the configuration computer - no PLC required
- Clear display and easy process operation using a Window-Based user interface
- Large selection of predefined screen objects for use during configuration
- Dynamic screen objects (e.g. moving objects),
- Uncomplicated and quick handling of recipes and data records in recipe screens and recipe views
- Logging of alarms, process values and login/logout procedures
- Creation of vector graphics using the WinCC flexible configuration software without an external graphics editor,
- Visual Basic Script for the realization of customized functions,
- ALARM\_S alarm procedure in connection with the SIMATIC S7,
- Transfer:
  - Automatic switchover to transfer mode
  - Transfer via MPI, PROFIBUS/DP, USB and Ethernet
  - Serial transfer
  - Transfer via TeleService
- Standard connections to SIMATIC S5/DP, SIMATIC S7 and SIMATIC 505, as well as to PLCs from other manufacturers

## Position in the SIMATIC HMI environment

The MP 370 extends the multifunctional platform product category for the upper performance range. It meets the demands placed on performance, display possibilities and price/performance ratio. In addition, it extends the communication potential of the office world. Customer needs and requests were taken into account in respect to extending data transfer functions, simplifying operation, and increasing acceptance when compared with Windows CE units. The introduction of the new touch panel unit with a 15" display means that this product category is now provided with a large screen with an increased visualization area.

The MP 370 consistently implements the concept of multifunctionality. In addition to supporting the traditional HMI applications (visualization with WinCC flexible), it also supports other applications such as process diagnostics (SIMATIC ProAgent/MP), UPS, Terminal Client (SIMATIC ThinClient/MP) for the touch screen units and Soft PLC (SIMATIC WinAC-MP). In addition, the MP 370 can also be used within the scope of the OPP (Open Platform Program).

The MP 370 is available as different device models with operation via touch panel or membrane keyboard according to the respective visualization tasks.

## 1.2 Area of use

### Overview

The HMI device allows graphic display of operating statuses, current process data and errors of connected PLCs. The user can operate and observe the machine or system being monitored easily using the HMI device.

Applicable areas of use include machine and apparatus construction sectors, printing and packing industries, automobile and electrical industries and chemical and pharmaceutical industries.

The high degree of protection (IP65 on the front side) and avoidance of moving storage media, such as hard disks and floppy disks, ensure that the HMI device is suitable for use in rough industrial environments and on site where a machine is located.

Possible installation locations for the HMI device:

- Switching cabinets/consoles
- 19" cabinets/racks (keyboard units)

Connection options for external peripherals (keyboard, mouse and printer) via a USB port, for example, and the possible use of CF and PC cards support multifunctionality. Due to the fact that the HMI device is equipped with high performance basic hardware and has a minimum installation depth means that it fulfills all the requirements for operation in the vicinity of the machine.

The HMI device can be used to:

- Operate and monitor the process using the menu system. Setpoint values or control element settings can be modified by entering values or activating configured softkeys
- Display processes, machines and systems on full-graphic, dynamic screens
- Display and process alarms and tags through output fields, bar graphs or trend curves
- Use input to intervene directly in the running process

## 1.3 Configuring with WinCC flexible

### Introduction

In order to operate a machine or system using an HMI device, the user interface must be configured for the HMI device. This procedure is referred to as the "configuration phase".

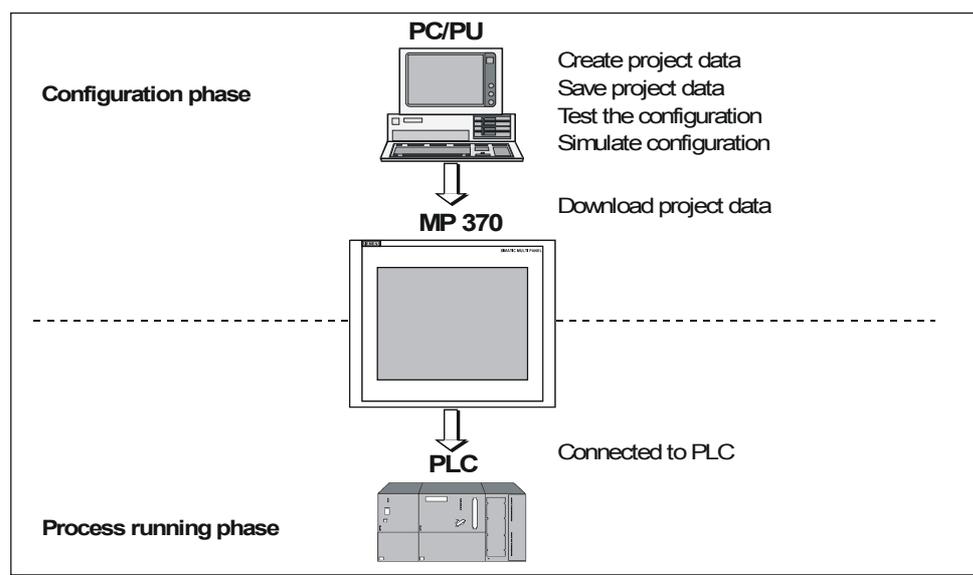


Figure 1-1 Configuration and process running phases

### Principle

1. Configuring the functionality of the user interface. This includes the following:

- Graphics
- Text
- Customized functions
- Operating and indicator elements

For this purpose, use a configuration computer (PC or programming device) containing the WinCC flexible configuration software.

2. Connect the configuration computer to the HMI device.

The following connection options are available:

- Serial
- MPI/PROFIBUS-DP network
- USB or Ethernet interface
- Standard modem path

3. Transfer the configuration to the HMI device.

4. Connect the HMI device to the PLC.

**Result**

The HMI device communicates with the PLC and responds to the program progress in the PLC ("process running phase") according to the information configured.

**1.4 Features**

**Overview of the HMI device**

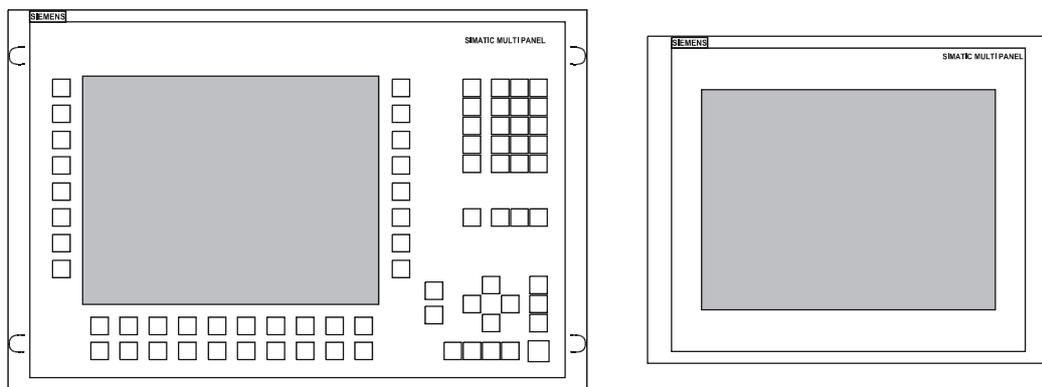


Figure 1-2 MP 370 as keyboard unit and touch panel unit

| Features      |   | MP 370 12"<br>Key   | MP 370 12"<br>Touch                         | MP 370 15"<br>Touch |
|---------------|---|---|---|---------------------|
| Processor     | Type  | 64 bit RISC CPU   |   |                     |
| Memory        | Capacity (max.)   | Free for user data:<br>12 MB flash memory (max. 7 MB for WinCC flexible configurations) |   |                     |
| Software      | Operating system  | Microsoft Windows CE  |   |                     |
| Interfaces    | Standard HMI device interfaces for connection to PLC, PC/PU and printer | 1 x RS 232/TTY (active/passive)<br>1 x RS 232 (9-pin)<br>1 x RS 422/RS485               |   |                     |
|               | S7 connection   | MPI/PROFIBUS-DP   |   |                     |
|               | More interfaces for network, external keyboard and mouse                | 1 x Ethernet (10/100 Mbit)<br>1 x USB (12 Mbaud/Host)                                   |   |                     |
| Color display | Type  | TFT LCD   | TFT LCD with touch panel (analog resistive) |                     |
|               | Active screen diagonal  | 12,1"   |   | 15,1"               |
|               | Resolution (pixels)   | 800 x 600 (Super VGA)   |   | 1024 x 768 (XGA)    |

| Features                 |  | MP 370 12" Key                       | MP 370 12" Touch | MP 370 15" Touch |
|--------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|------------------|------------------|
|                          | Possible colors  | 256                                  |                  |                  |
|                          | Back-lighting  | CCFL tubes                           |                  |                  |
| Membrane keyboard        | System keys with dedicated functions                         | 38 (3 with LEDs)                     | -                |                  |
|                          | Softkeys with configurable functions                         | 36 (with LEDs)                       | -                |                  |
|                          | for local assignment   | 36                                   | -                |                  |
|                          | Softkey labeling   | System-specific with labeling strips | -                |                  |
| Acoustic acknowledgement | In the case of touch control                                 | -                                    | x                |                  |
| Special features         | External memory extension for recipes, logs and alarms etc.: |                                      |                  |                  |
|                          | Slot for PC card   | x                                    |                  |                  |
|                          | Slot for CF card   | x                                    |                  |                  |

### Further information

The creation of projects for HMI devices and functions for the configuration software is described in detail in the "WinCC flexible" user manual and in the WinCC online help.

Information on connecting the HMI device to the PLC is provided in the "WinCC flexible Communication" user manual.

The "Readme.chm" file on the WinCC flexible CD contains the most current information which could not be included in the manuals and online help due to time constraints.

## 1.5 Functional scope

### General information

The following table summarizes the range of functions provided by the HMI device. The numeric values are maximum values which the HMI device is capable of managing. These values are not cumulative. It is not possible to simultaneously configure 4000 alarms and 300 screens each with 400 tags per screen.

The defined values are also limited by the size of the configuration memory.

| Function |                 | Keyboard unit                      | Touch panel unit |
|----------|-----------------|------------------------------------|------------------|
| Alarms   | Number          | 4000                               |                  |
|          | Discrete alarms | Yes                                |                  |
|          | Analog alarms   | Yes                                |                  |
|          | Indicators      | Alarm line/Alarm window/alarm view |                  |

1.5 Functional scope

|                              | Function  | Keyboard unit   | Touch panel unit |
|------------------------------|---|---|------------------|
|                              | Process values in alarm text  | 8   |                  |
|                              | Length of the alarm text  | 80 characters (dependent on font)   |                  |
|                              | Color-coding of different alarm states                                  | x   |                  |
|                              | Warning alarms  | x   |                  |
|                              | Error alarms  | x   |                  |
|                              | Type of display   | First/last, selectable  |                  |
|                              | Acknowledge individual alarms   | x   |                  |
|                              | Acknowledge several error alarms simultaneously (group acknowledgement) | 16 acknowledgment groups  |                  |
| <b>ALARM_S</b>               | Display S7 alarms   | x   |                  |
| <b>Alarm logging</b>         | Output to printer   | x   |                  |
| <b>Volatile alarm buffer</b> | Alarm buffer capacity   | 1024 alarm events, circular buffer  |                  |
|                              | View alarms   | x   |                  |
|                              | Delete  | x   |                  |
|                              | Print   | x   |                  |
| <b>Alarm acquisition</b>     | Time of occurrence  | Date/time   |                  |
|                              | Alarm events  | Arrived, departed, acknowledged   |                  |
| <b>Screens</b>               | Number  | 500   |                  |
|                              | Text objects  | 30000 text elements   |                  |
|                              | Fields per screen   | 400   |                  |
|                              | Tags per screen   | 400   |                  |
|                              | Screen objects  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Button</li> <li>• Switch</li> <li>• I/O field</li> <li>• Graphic I/O field</li> <li>• Symbolic I/O field</li> <li>• Alarm indicator</li> <li>• Alarm view</li> <li>• Alarm window</li> <li>• Recipe view</li> <li>• Bar</li> <li>• Trend view</li> <li>• Slider control</li> <li>• Gauge</li> <li>• Date / time field</li> <li>• Clock</li> <li>• User view</li> <li>• Status force</li> <li>• Sm@rtClient view</li> <li>• Symbol library</li> </ul> |                  |

| Function                      |   | Keyboard unit  | Touch panel unit |
|-------------------------------|---|--|------------------|
|                               | Operator prompting:                           |  |                  |
|                               | Help text                                     | x  | x                |
|                               | Animation                                     | x  | x                |
|                               | Unhide/hide objects                           | x  | x                |
|                               | Pictograms for function keys                  | x  | -                |
|                               | Tab order                                     | x  | -                |
|                               | LEDs in function keys                         | x  | -                |
|                               | Fixed window                                  | x  |                  |
| <b>Tags</b>                   | Number  | 2048 <sup>1)</sup>   |                  |
| <b>Limit value monitoring</b> | Input/output                                  | x  |                  |
| <b>Conversion functions</b>   | Input/output                                  | x  |                  |
| <b>Help text</b>              | Lines/characters                              | 7/35 (dependent on font)   |                  |
|                               | For alarms                                    | x  |                  |
|                               | For screens                                   | x  |                  |
|                               | For screen objects                            |  |                  |
|                               | I/O field                                     | x  | x                |
|                               | Symbolic I/O field                            | x  | x                |
|                               | Graphic I/O field                             | x  | x                |
|                               | Button  | x  | -                |
|                               | Switch  | x  | -                |
|                               | Hidden button                                 | x  | -                |
| <b>Logging</b>                | Alarms  | x  |                  |
|                               | Tags  | x  |                  |
|                               | Log type                                      | Circular/sequential log  |                  |
|                               | Number of logs                                | 50   |                  |
|                               | Number of tags for logging                    | 50   |                  |
|                               | Number of sequential logs                     | 400  |                  |
|                               | Entries per log                               | 500000, limited by storage medium <sup>2)</sup>  |                  |
|                               | Memory location                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PC card</li> <li>• CF card</li> <li>• Ethernet</li> </ul> |                  |
| <b>Lists</b>                  | Number  | 500  |                  |
|                               | Graphics lists                                | 500  |                  |
|                               | Text lists                                    | 500  |                  |
| <b>Print functions</b>        | Hardcopy of the screen content, also in color | x  |                  |
|                               | Direct alarm logging                          | x  |                  |
|                               | Freely configurable logs                      | x  |                  |
| <b>Safety</b>                 | Number of user groups                         | 10   |                  |
|                               | No. of users                                  | 32   |                  |
|                               | No. of authorizations                         | Tag  |                  |
| <b>Recipes</b>                | Number  | 500  |                  |
|                               | Data records per recipe <sup>2)</sup>         | 1000   |                  |

| Function                    |   | Keyboard unit   | Touch panel unit |
|-----------------------------|---|---|------------------|
|                             | Elements per recipe                       | 1000  |                  |
|                             | Recipe memory                             | 128 KB (integr. Flash, expandable)  |                  |
| Online language change      | Number of languages                       | 5   |                  |
|                             | Project languages (with system alarms)    | Chinese (simplified), Chinese (traditional), Czechoslovakian, Danish, Dutch, English, Finnish, French, German, Greek, Hungarian, Italian, Japanese, Korean, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish |                  |
| PU functions (Status force) | SIMATIC S5                                | x   |                  |
|                             | SIMATIC S7                                | x   |                  |
| Scheduler                   | Trigger functions cyclically or once      | x   |                  |
| VBScript                    | User-specific expansions of functionality | x   |                  |
|                             | Number of scripts                         | 100   |                  |
|                             | Number of lines per script                | 500   |                  |
| Connections <sup>3)</sup>   | Number                                    | 6   |                  |

- 1) Maximum total number for PowerTags and internal tags
- 2) Storage media refers to PC cards, CF cards and network drives
- 3) With SIMATIC S7

## 1.6 Communication with PLCs

The following table list the PLCs which can be connected to the HMI device.

Table 1-1 Communication with SIMATIC PLCs

| PLC                       | Keyboard unit | Touch panel unit |
|---------------------------|---------------|------------------|
| SIMATIC S5 AS511          |               | x                |
| SIMATIC S5 DP             |               | x                |
| SIMATIC S7-200            |               | x                |
| SIMATIC S7-300/400        |               | x                |
| SIMATIC 500/505 serial    |               | x                |
| SIMATIC 500/505 DP        |               | x                |
| SIMATIC HMI HTTP Protocol |               | x                |
| OPC <sup>1)</sup>         |               | x                |
| SIMATIC WinAC             |               | x                |
| SIMOTION                  |               | x                |

- 1) Data exchange only via XML (connection to OPC-XML server)

Table 1-2 Communication with PLCs from other manufacturers

| PLC                      | Keyboard unit | Touch panel unit |
|--------------------------|---------------|------------------|
| Allen Bradley DF1        |               | x                |
| Allen Bradley DH485      |               | x                |
| LG GLOFA-GM              |               | x                |
| Modicon MODBUS           |               | x                |
| Mitsubishi FX            |               | x                |
| Mitsubishi protocol 4    |               | x                |
| GE Fanuc SNP             |               | x                |
| Omron Hostlink/Multilink |               | x                |

## 1.7 Options

### 1.7.1 Hardware options

#### 1.7.1.1 Backup battery

##### Function of the backup battery

The battery ensures that in the event of a power failure, the HMI device's internal hardware clock continues to run. If no battery is available, the clock continues for approx. three days as long as the HMI device was in operation for 6 to 8 hours, without interruption, beforehand.

The battery is not supplied with the HMI device. Please refer to the Siemens Catalog ST80 for the order number.

##### Procedure

1. Secure the battery to the back of the HMI device with two cable ties. The position is indicated by an arrow for both touch panel and keyboard units in the following figures.

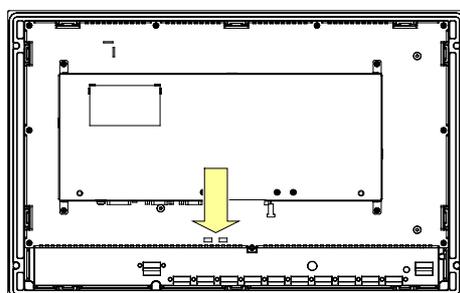


Figure 1-3 MP 370 12" Key

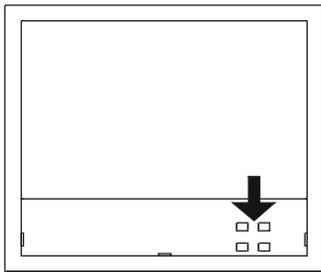


Figure 1-4 MP 370 12" Touch

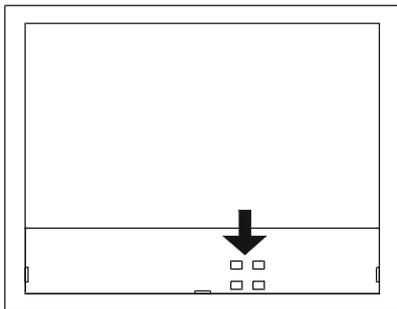


Figure 1-5 MP 370 15" Touch

2. Connect the plug on the battery cable to the two-pole connector strip on the underside of the device. The plug is coded to prevent reversed poling.

**See also**

Interfaces (Page 4-4)

Replacing the optional backup battery (Page 11-2)

**1.7.1.2 PC card / CF card**

**Purpose**

Changeable PC cards and Compact-Flash cards can be inserted in the two slots, Slot A and Slot B, at the rear of the HMI device. They are not supplied with the HMI device.

Changeable memory cards can be used, for example, to store important process data or execute a backup/restore of the internal flash memory.

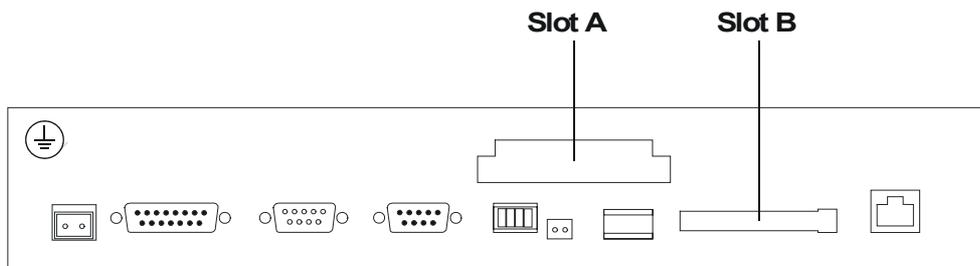


Figure 1-6 Positions of the slots

## Cards supported

The HMI device supports the use of all standard cards which operate with a programming voltage of 5 V (types I and II):

- Slot A (PC card):
  - ATA Flash card
  - SRAM card
  - NE2000-compatible Ethernet card
- Slot B (Compact Flash Card):
  - ATA Flash card
  - NE2000-compatible Ethernet card

## Remove memory card

---

### Caution

Ensure that the HMI device does not access the memory card during the removal process. Otherwise, the contents of the memory card will be fully destroyed.

---

1. Terminate access made by the HMI device to the memory card.

If the configuration planner has defined an operating element linked to the "CloseAllLogs" system function, press the element. Otherwise, press the operating element linked to the "Exit runtime" system function in the configuration. This stops the runtime software.
2. Wait until the HMI device displays the loader.

Changeover to the loader may take several minutes depending on the size and number of logs stored.
3. Remove the memory card.

## Switch off the HMI device with memory card inserted

---

### Caution

Always terminate the runtime software before switching off the voltage supply in order to prevent loss of data.

---

1. Stop the runtime software.

Press the operating element linked to the "Exit runtime" system function in the configuration.
2. Wait until the HMI device displays the loader.

Changeover to the loader may take several minutes depending on the size and number of logs stored.

3. Switch off the power supply.

If the power supply is interrupted during normal operation, the HMI device checks the memory card after power is restored and repairs any defect sectors.

**See also**

HMI device loader (Page 6-1)

## 1.7.2 Software options

### 1.7.2.1 Internet Explorer

#### Overview

The Internet Explorer supplied with the HMI device has been specially adapted to the Windows CE operating system and has a restricted functional scope (Pocket Internet Explorer). Only small HTML pages, about 100 kb, can be displayed.

Installation of the Internet Explorer is completed using the ProSave service tool.

Files created in Internet Explorer (e.g. Favorites) are stored in the DRAM file system. The DRAM file system is deleted when the unit is switched off. However, using the system settings (OP Properties ? Persistent Storage ? Save Files), it is possible to backup the data currently available in the DRAM file system to the Flash memory. When the device is started up, the data saved is automatically restored.

If you remove the Internet Explorers, the files created from Internet Explorer must also be deleted. To do this, delete the files in the DRAM file system using the standard Explorer. Then backup the DRAM file system ("OP Properties ? Persistent Storage ? Save Files").

---

**Note**

The initial configuration can be restored simply by updating the operating system.

---

**See also**

Update operating system (Page 7-18)

## Safety notes and general information

### 2.1 Safety notes

#### Work on the cabinet



---

**Warning****Dangerous voltage**

Opening the cabinet will expose high voltage parts. Contact with these parts could be fatal.  
Switch off the power supply to the cabinet before opening it.

---

#### High frequency radiation

---

**Notice****Undesirable operating conditions**

High-frequency emissions, e.g. from cell phones, can cause undesirable operating conditions.

---

### 2.2 General information

#### Industrial use

The HMI device is designed for industrial use. The following standards are met:

- Requirements for emitted interference in EN 61000-6-4: 2001
- Requirements for noise immunity in EN 61000-6-2: 2001

## **Residential use**

If the HMI device is used in a residential area, you must take measures to achieve limit class B in accordance with EN 55011 for radio interference emissions.

Suitable measures to achieve limit class B for suppression of radio interference include:

- Installation of the HMI device in a grounded control cabinet
- Use of filters in electrical supply lines

## Plan deployment

### 3.1 Transport

Only unpack the HMI device at its location of use.

---

#### Notice

Ensure that no condensation develops on or in the HMI device after it has been transported at low temperatures or it has been exposed to extreme temperature fluctuations.

Allow the HMI device to warm up to room temperature before starting it up. Do not attempt to warm the device using direct heat. If condensation has formed, the HMI device may only be switched on when it has completely dried, normally after waiting approximately 4 hours.

---

Problem-free, reliable operation of the HMI device requires proper transport, storage, positioning and assembly as well as careful operation and maintenance.

Failure to meet these requirements voids the rights to claims under the terms of warranty.

---

#### Notice

The HMI device was function-tested before shipping. If a malfunction occurs nevertheless, please enclose a full description of the malfunction when returning the device.

---

### 3.2 Electromagnetic compatibility

#### Electromagnetic compatibility

The HMI device fulfills the requirements stipulated in the EMC law of the Federal Republic of Germany as well as the EMC guidelines of the European Union.

Installation in grounded metal cabinets, e.g. 8 MC cabinet complying to Siemens catalog NV21, ensures compliance to EN 61000-4-2.

### Installing HMI devices conform to EMC requirements

Conditions for error-free operation include a PLC design that conforms to EMC requirements and the use of interference-proof cables. The "Guidelines for Interference-Free Construction of PLCs" and the "PROFIBUS network Manual" are installation references for the HMI device.



---

#### Caution

Only shielded cables are permitted for all signal connections.

Screw or lock all plug connections.

Do not install signal lines in the same cable ducts as power cables.

Siemens AG refuses to accept liability for malfunctions and damage arising from use of self-made cables or cables from other manufacturers.

---

### Conditions for use

The HMI device is intended for installation in weatherproof, permanent locations. The conditions under which the device can be used exceed the requirements set out in DIN IEC 60721-3-3:

- Class 3M3 (mechanical requirements)
- Class 3K3 (climatic requirements)

### Use with additional measures

Examples of applications where the use of the HMI device requires additional measures are:

- In locations with a high degree of ionizing radiation
- In locations with extreme operating conditions, e.g.:
  - Corrosive vapors or gases
  - Strong electric or magnetic fields
- In systems requiring special monitoring, e.g.:
  - elevator systems
  - In particularly hazardous locations

The HMI device may be installed in a cabinet as an additional measure.

### See also

EMC requirements (Page 12-7)

## 3.3 Installation locations and type of protection

### Installation location

The HMI device is designed for installation in the front panels of cabinets and consoles. Keyboard units can also be installed in 19" cabinets and racks.

Cut an installation cut-out in a front panel. The thickness of the front panel must not exceed 6 mm. Additional holes for securing the HMI device are not necessary because a clamping mechanism is available.

### Degree of protection

Install the HMI device to meet the minimum requirements for IP54 degree of protection. The IP65 degree of protection for the front panel can only be ensured when the seal on the front plate of the HMI device is fitted correctly.

---

#### Notice

The NEMA 4, NEMA 12 and IP65 degrees of protection are only guaranteed when the thickness of the installation support is at least 2.5 mm.

---

---

#### Caution

The system's ability to be waterproof and dustproof as per the section "Approvals" is only guaranteed when the following are met:

- Material thickness of installation cut-out: 2,5 to 6 mm
  - Deviation of the installation cut-out from the horizontal based on the overall dimensions of the HMI device: ? 0.5 mm
  - Permissible surface roughness in the area of the seal: max. 120 µm (R<sub>z</sub> 120)
- 

### Ambient conditions

---

#### Caution

If the maximum permissible ambient temperature is exceeded, do not operate the HMI device without external ventilation.

Otherwise, the HMI device may be damaged, nullifying the approvals listed in the "Approvals" section as well as the warranty for the HMI device.

---

### See also

Technical specifications (Page 12-5)

Approvals (Page A-1)

## 3.4 Producing the installation cut-out

### Select position for the installation cut-out



---

#### Caution

To prevent the HMI device from overheating during operation:

- The maximum angle of inclination from vertical installation may not be exceeded (see "Specifications" chapter).
  - Do not expose the operating unit to direct sunlight.
  - Ensure that the ventilation slits in the housing are not obstructed.
- 

### Installation cut-out

---

#### Notice

The following air flow requirements must be maintained following installation:

- 100 mm above the HMI device
- 50 mm below the HMI device
- 15 mm at the sides of the HMI device
- 50 mm at the bottom of the HMI device

When using plug-in boards, ensure sufficient space is provided to insert or remove them.

---

### MP 370 12" Touch

For installation in the front panel, the touch panel requires an installation cut-out (WxH) of 310 <sup>+1</sup> mm x 248 <sup>+1</sup> mm. The thickness of the front panel must not exceed 6 mm.

### MP 370 15" Touch

For installation in the front panel, the touch panel requires an installation cut-out (WxH) of 368 <sup>+1</sup> mm x 290 <sup>+1</sup> mm. The thickness of the front panel must not exceed 6 mm.

### MP 370 12" Key

For installation in the front panel, the keyboard unit requires an installation cut-out (WxH) of 450 <sup>+1</sup> mm x 290 <sup>+1</sup> mm. The thickness of the front panel must not exceed 6 mm.

### See also

Technical specifications (Page 12-5)

## Installation and connection

### 4.1 Check shipment

Check the packing contents for visible signs of transport damage and for completeness.

---

**Notice**

Do not install parts damaged during shipment. In the case of damaged parts, contact your Siemens representative.

---

Keep the documentation supplied. It belongs to the HMI device and may be required for future commissioning.

### 4.2 Installation of the HMI device

#### Prior to installation

If you want to change the labels on the softkeys, change the labeling strips before installing the HMI device.

#### Installation in 19" cabinets/racks

Refer to the information provided by the respective cabinet or rack manufacturer to install the device in a 19" cabinet/rack.

Installation dimensions of standard 19" cabinets:

- Width: 19" (482.6 mm)
- Height: 7 HE (310 mm)

Secure the HMI device: to the rails using four screws

#### See also

Labeling the softkeys (Page 5-6)

Installation locations and type of protection (Page 3-3)

Dimensions MP 370 12" Key (Page 12-4)

### 4.2.1 Installation of the touch panel unit

#### Installation in front panels

1. Working from the front, insert the HMI device in the installation cut-out.

---

**Note**

Take the necessary precautions to ensure the HMI device cannot drop out of the front panel before it has been secured.

---

2. When installing an MP 370 with a 12" display and touch control, hang the hooks of the enclosed eight screw clamps into the recesses in the housing of the HMI device.

The recesses are marked by arrows in the figure.

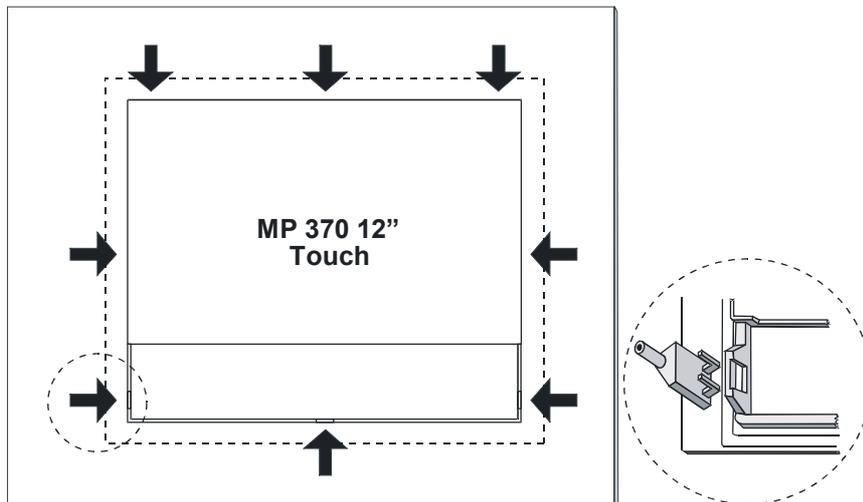


Figure 4-1 Screw clamps on the MP 370 12" Touch

3. When installing an MP 370 with a 12" display and key control or an MP 370 with a 15" display and touch control, hang the hooks of the enclosed ten screw clamps into the recesses in the housing of the HMI device.

The recesses are marked by arrows in the figure.

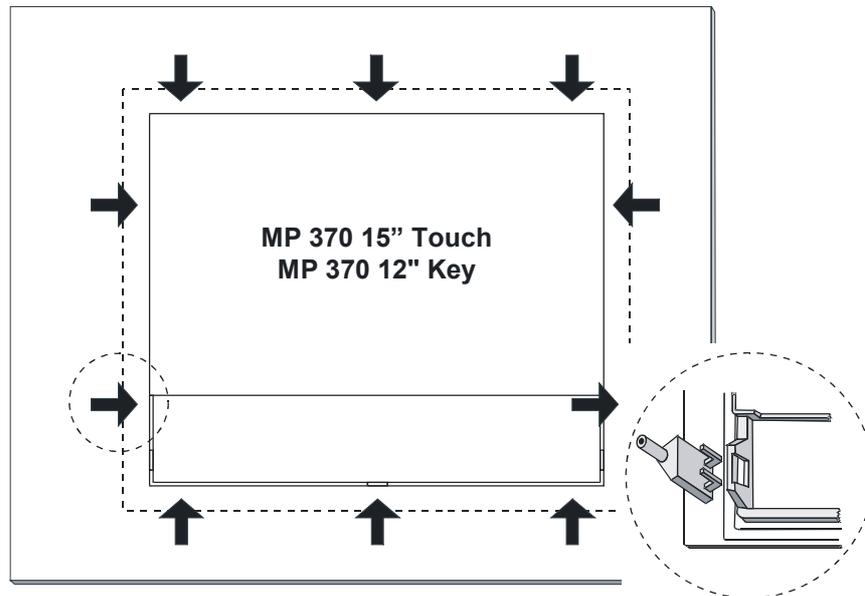


Figure 4-2 Screw clamps on the MP 370 12" Key and MP 370 15" Touch

4. Secure the HMI device to the front panel from the back using an Allen wrench.

---

**Caution**

Make sure the seal is seated correctly against the front panel.  
Over tightening the screws will damage the HMI device.

---

**See also**

Installation locations and type of protection (Page 3-3)  
Dimensions MP 370 12" Touch (Page 12-1)  
Dimensions MP 370 15" Touch (Page 12-3)

## 4.3 Connecting the HMI device

### 4.3.1 Conditions

#### Requirements

The following condition must be fulfilled before the HMI device is connected electrically:

- The HMI device must be installed according to the information provided in these operating instructions.

### Electrical connections

Connect the HMI device in the following sequence:

1. Potential equalization line
2. PLC
3. Configuration computer as necessary
4. Peripheral equipment as necessary
5. Power supply

**Notice**

**Connection sequence**

Make the HMI device connections in the order they are described. Failure to do so may result in damage to the HMI device.

When disconnecting, it is essential that you follow the sequence in reverse order.

### 4.3.2 Interfaces

#### Interfaces

The following figure illustrates the arrangement of the ports on the underside of the HMI device.

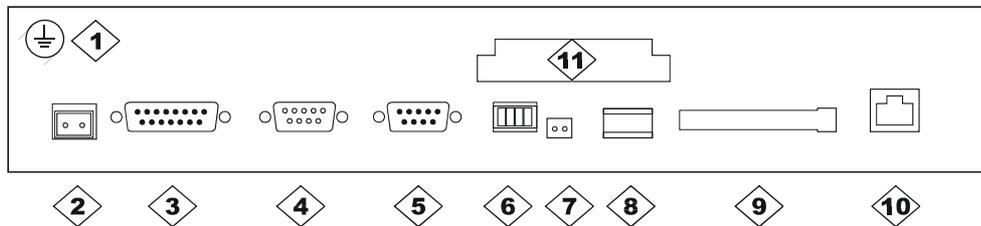


Figure 4-3 Arrangement of the ports

| No. | Name               | Application                                   |
|-----|--------------------|---|
| 1   | Ground connection  | For connection to rack ground                 |
| 2   | Power supply       | Connection to power supply +24 V DC)          |
| 3   | Interface IF1A     | RS232/TTY (active/passive) for controller     |
| 4   | Interface IF2      | RS232 for PC, PG, printer                     |
| 5   | Interface IF1B     | RS422/RS485 (floating) for controller         |
| 6   | Switch             | To configure interface IF1B                   |
| 7   | Battery connection | Connection for optional backup battery        |
| 8   | USB interface      | Connection for external keyboard, mouse, etc. |
| 9   | Slot B             | For CF card                                   |
| 10  | Ethernet interface | Connection of an RJ45 Ethernet line           |

|    |        |             |
|----|--------|-------------|
| 11 | Slot A | For PC card |
|----|--------|-------------|

**Notice**

Connecting a USB distributor (USB hub) to the HMI device's USB interface can cause a restriction in the functionality of the connected USB devices and the HMI device.

Therefore, the simultaneous or alternating operation of USB devices connected via a USB hub on the HMI device's USB interface is not approved.

This applies to USB hubs both with and without an internal power supply.

**Notice**

The connection and operation of USB memory media (e.g. USB stick) on the HMI device's USB interface has not been approved.

**Communication options**

The following table lists the peripherals with which the HMI device can communicate.

| Device                  | Connection          | Interface |
|-------------------------|---------------------|-----------|
| SIMATIC S5              | AS511 (TTY)         | IF1A      |
|                         | PROFIBUS DP         | IF1B      |
| SIMATIC S7              | MPI                 | IF1B      |
|                         | PROFIBUS DP         | IF1B      |
|                         | Industrial Ethernet | Ethernet  |
| SIMATIC 505             | RS 232              | IF1A      |
|                         | RS 422/RS485        | IF1B      |
| Further support         | RS 232/TTY          | IF1A      |
|                         | RS 422/RS485        | IF1B      |
| Configuration computer  | RS 232              | IF2       |
| Printer                 |                     |           |
| Local printer           | RS 232              | IF2       |
| Network printer         | Network             | Ethernet  |
| UBS printer             | USB                 | USB       |
| External keyboard/mouse |                     | USB       |

**See also**

- Interface description (Page 12-8)
- Connecting the power supply (Page 4-15)
- Backup battery (Page 1-9)
- Connecting the PLC (Page 4-11)
- Technical specifications (Page 12-5)

### 4.3.3 Connecting the potential equalization

#### Ground connection



Connect the grounding connection of the HMI device to the rack ground. Use the grounding screw provided and a conducting cable with a diameter of at least 4 mm<sup>2</sup>.

#### Potential difference

Potential differences can occur between separate system parts which lead to high equalizing currents. An example would be when line shields are applied on both sides and grounding occurs on different system parts.

The cause of potential differences can be different supply connections.

#### General requirements for equipotential bonding

Potential differences must be reduced by laying sufficient equipotential bonding cables to ensure problem-free operation of the electronic components concerned. Therefore, the following must be observed when setting up equipotential bonding:

- The effectiveness of the equipotential bonding increases as the the impedance of the equipotential bonding cables decreases (i.e., or as the cross section of the equipotential bonding cable increases).
- If two system parts are connected to each other via shielded data lines with shielding connected to the grounding/protective conductor on both sides, the impedance of the additionally laid equipotential bonding cables must not exceed 10% of the shield impedance.
- The cross-section of an equipotential bonding cable must be selected to accommodate the maximum equalizing current flow. In practice, equipotential bonding cables between control cabinets with a minimum cross-section of 16 mm<sup>2</sup> have proven sufficient.
- Use equipotential bonding cables made of copper or galvanized steel. Connect the equipotential bonding cables properly to the grounding/protective conductor with the greatest possible surface area and protect them from corrosion.
- Clamp the shielding of the data line on the HMI device flush and as close as possible to the potential equalization rail using cable clips.
- Lay the equipotential bonding cables and data lines parallel to one another with a minimum gap (see figure below, Item 6).

---

#### Notice

##### Equipotential bonding cable

Cable shields are not suitable for equipotential bonding. Use only the intended potential cable prescribed. For example, potential cables must have a minimum cross-section of 16 mm<sup>2</sup>. When setting up MPI and PROFIBUS DP networks, make sure to use cables with a sufficient cross-section; otherwise, the interface modules may be damaged or even destroyed.

---

## Connection configuration

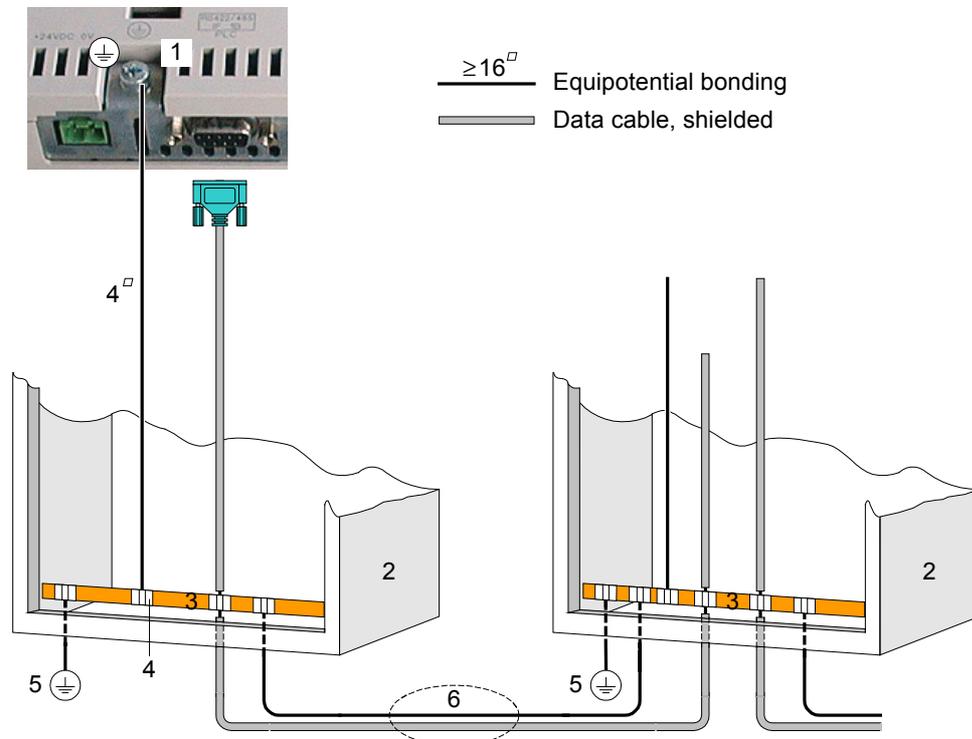


Figure 4-4 Setting up potential equalization in the HMI device

- 1 Grounding connection on the HMI device
- 2 Switching cabinet
- 3 Voltage bus
- 4 Cable clip
- 5 Grounding connection
- 6 Parallel laying of equipotential bonding cable and data line

## 4.3.4 Connecting peripheral equipment

### 4.3.4.1 Connect printer

#### Connection configuration

The figure below illustrates how to connect a printer to the HMI device. The HMI device supports the following printer standards:

- compatible with ESC/P, 9-pin ESC/P or ESC/P2 (EPSON)  
e.g., EPSON LQ 300+

- compatible with PCL3 (Hewlett Packard)  
e.g., Brother HL 1450

USB printers can still be used for PCL and Epson9 modes.

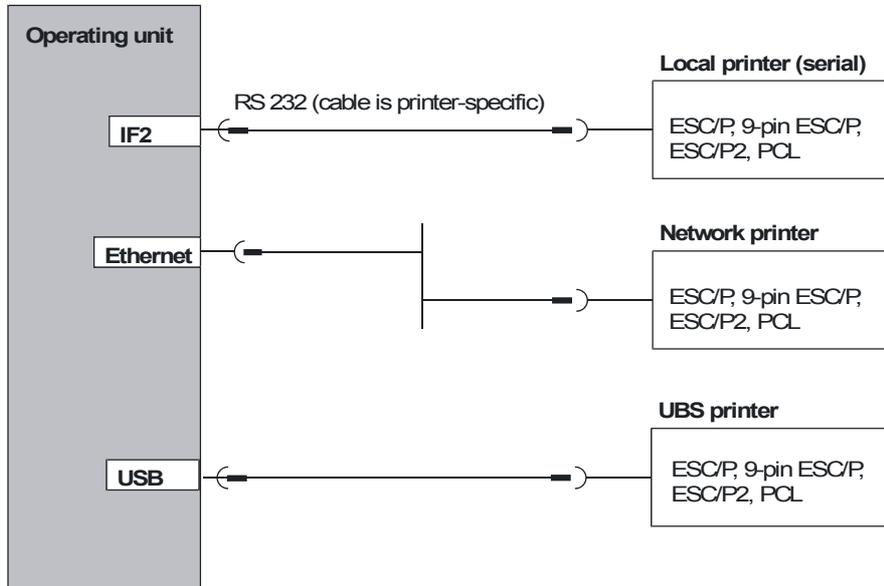


Figure 4-5 Printer connection configuration

---

**Notice**

Connecting a USB distributor (USB hub) to the HMI device's USB interface can cause a restriction in the functionality of the connected USB devices and the HMI device.

Therefore, the simultaneous or alternating operation of USB devices connected via a USB hub on the HMI device's USB interface is not approved.

This applies to USB hubs both with and without an internal power supply.

---

---

**Notice**

Only use a cable with braided metal screening grounded at each end for connecting the HMI device and printer.

Deactivate the "Printer" option in the "Serial Transfer Remote Control" setting in the Windows CE Control Panel if a serial printer is connected to the HMI device via the IF2 interface.

Some printers may require the ASCII character set used in the project to also be defined on the printer.

---

If a serial printer is connected, the following printer settings are required:

- RS 232, whereby only the RxD, TxD and GND signals are required,
- 8 data bits
- 1 stop bit
- No parity
- Baud rate between 9600 and 57600, printer-dependent
- XON / XOFF protocol

The Siemens Catalog ST 80 contains the printers approved by Siemens AG. A current list of approved printers is available on the Internet.

---

**Note**

**Printer documentation**

Refer to the information provide by the printer manufacturer when connecting the printer.

---

#### 4.3.4.2 Connect external keyboard and mouse

##### Connection configuration

The figure below illustrates how to connect a keyboard or mouse to the HMI device's USB interface. A keyboard or mouse can be connected and disconnected during normal operation.

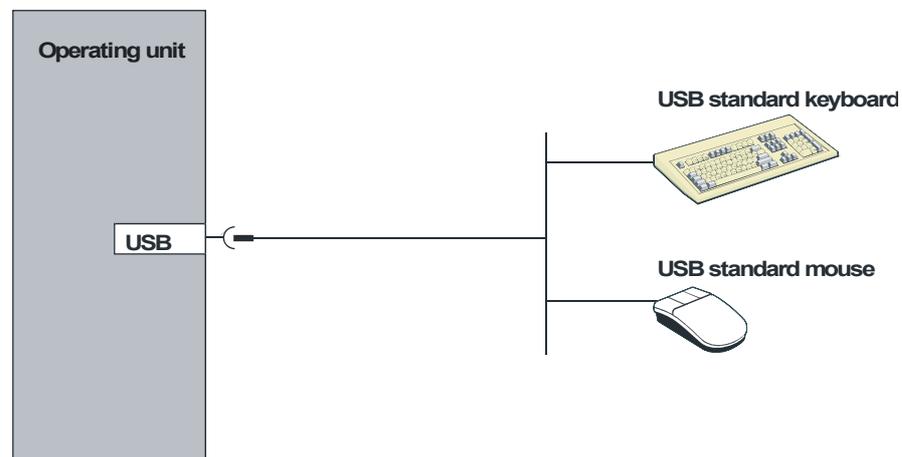


Figure 4-6 Connection configuration for external keyboard and mouse

---

**Notice**

Connecting a USB distributor (USB hub) to the HMI device's USB interface can cause a restriction in the functionality of the connected USB devices and the HMI device.

Therefore, the simultaneous or alternating operation of USB devices connected via a USB hub on the HMI device's USB interface is not approved.

This applies to USB hubs both with and without an internal power supply.

---

---

**Notice**

Use a standard mouse and keyboard with a "USA/International" keyboard layout. Commercially available USB devices do not normally meet the higher industrial demands relating to interference resistance and can have negative effects on the HMI device.

The power consumption must not exceed 500 mA with the USB units connected.

---

**See also**

Operation with external keyboard/mouse (Page 5-9)

### 4.3.5 Connecting the PLC

#### Connection configuration

The figure below illustrates the basic connection possibilities between the HMI device and PLC. Standard cables are available for the connections shown (refer to the ST80 catalog).

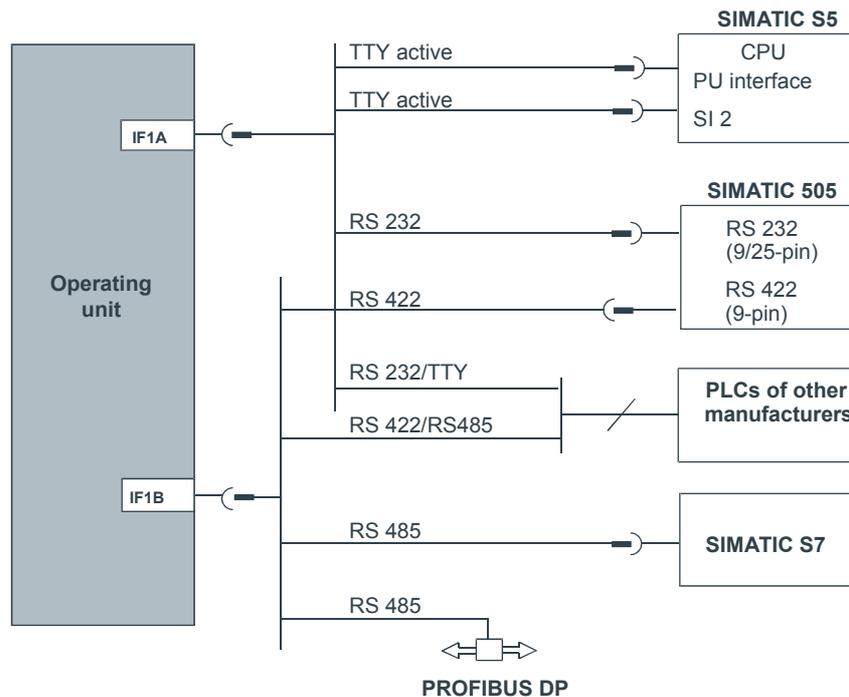


Figure 4-7 Connection configuration for PLCs

- SIMATIC S7  
Use only the approved cables for connection to a SIMATIC S7.
- IF1A / IF1B  
To enable operation using the serial interface, connect either the IF1A (RS 232/TTY) or IF1B (RS 422/485), but not both. The IF1B interface can be configured using a switch.
- PROFIBUS DP  
Any PROFIBUS-DP bus terminal can be used.

#### Configure interface IF1B

The IF1B interface can be configured via the switches on the back of the HMI device. This switches over the RS-422 received data and the RTS signal for RS485. By default, the switch is set for the SIMATIC S7 PLC.

The following table shows the permissible switch settings.

| Communication  | Switch settings   |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                          |
|--|---|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
|  | <p>4 3 2 1</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> </table> <p>ON</p> <p>No RTS on connector<br/>This is the switch setting on delivery.</p> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                          |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/>  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                          |
|  | <p>4 3 2 1</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> </table> <p>ON</p>  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | <input type="checkbox"/>  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                          |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                          |
|  | <p>4 3 2 1</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> </table> <p>ON</p> <p>RTS on Pin 4 (default)</p>  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
|  | <input type="checkbox"/>  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                          |
|  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                          |
| <p>4 3 2 1</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> </table> <p>ON</p> <p>RTS on Pin 9 (as PU)</p> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |                          |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                          |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/>  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                          |
| <p>4 3 2 1</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> <td><input type="checkbox"/></td> </tr> </table> <p>ON</p> <p>No RTS on connector</p>  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            |                          |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                          |
| <input type="checkbox"/>   | <input type="checkbox"/>  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/>            |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                                     |                          |

Compressing the internal program memory with SIMATIC S5



**Warning**

In the case of the SIMATIC S5, compressing the PLC's internal program memory ("Compress" PU function, integrated FB COMPR) is not permitted if an HMI device is connected. When memory is compressed, the absolute addresses of the blocks in the program memory change. Since the HMI device only reads the address list during startup, it does not recognize the address change and accesses the wrong memory areas.

If you cannot avoid compressing memory during operation, turn off the HMI device before running the compress function.

### 4.3.6 Connecting the configuration computer

#### Connection configuration

The figure below illustrates how to connect a configuration computer (PG or PC) to the HMI device for transferring project data.

Standard cables are available for the connections shown (refer to the Siemens catalog ST80).

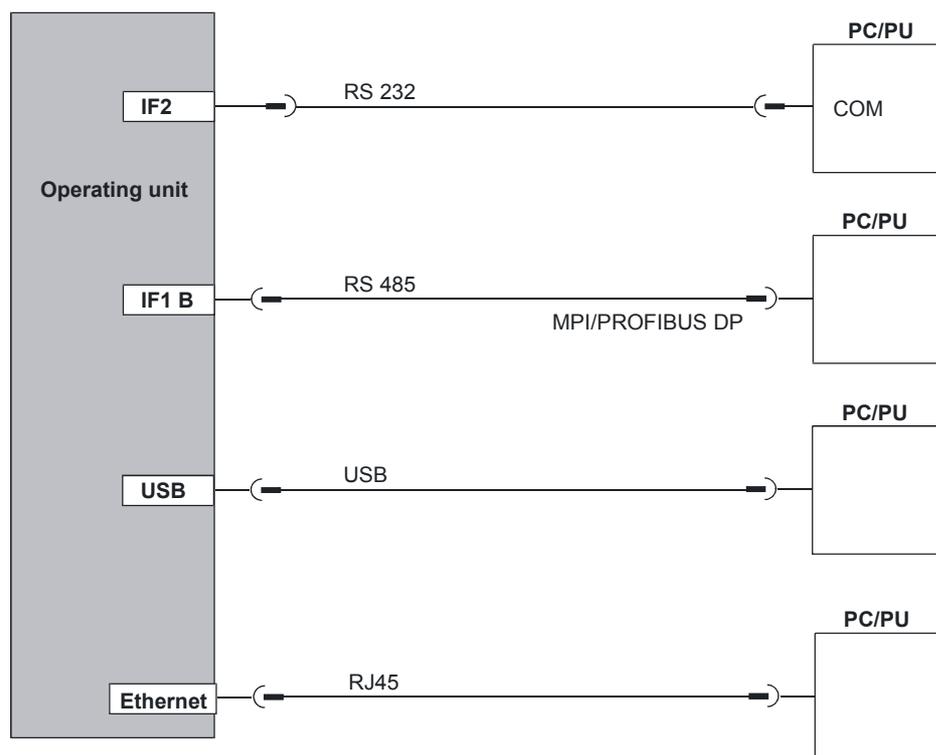


Figure 4-8 Connection configuration for configuration computer

#### Notice

Use a master-master cable for the USB connection between the HMI device and the configuration computer. Do not use the driver supplied with the cable for the transfer. Only install the USB driver supplied with WinCC flexible on the configuration computer. This driver is on the WinCC flexible CD under "\Support\DeviceDriver\USB".

### 4.3.7 Connecting an uninterruptible power supply (UPS)

#### Connecting a UPS

The following options are available to connect a UPS:

- UPS with serial interface

A UPS with serial interface is connected directly to the HMI device.

A serial connection is used with a "SITOP DC-USV Module A". The driver for detecting and configuring the UPS is contained on the WinCC flexible CD and must be installed on the HMI device using ProSave.

- UPS without serial interface

A UPS without serial interface is connected to the PLC.

The UPS signals the power failure to the connected PLC via a digital signal. The PLC program must then signal the HMI device that runtime must be terminated. To do this, the PLC changes a tag to which the "Exit runtime" function is configured in WinCC flexible.

---

#### Note

In order to use an uninterruptible power supply with serial interface on the HMI device, the "Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)" option must be loaded on the HMI device.

---

#### Connection configuration

The figure below illustrates how to connect an uninterruptible power supply UPS with serial interface to the HMI device.

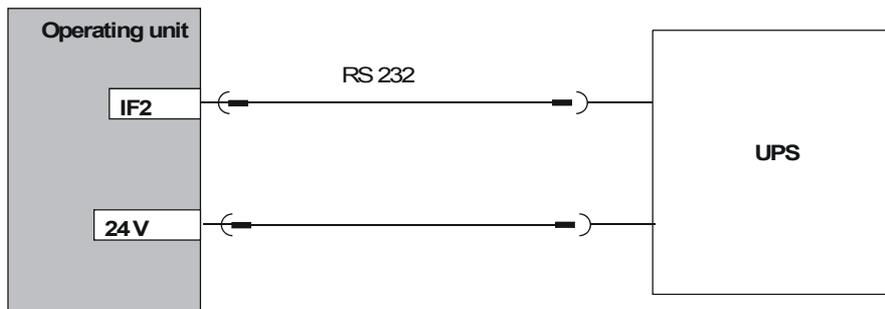


Figure 4-9 Connection configuration for an uninterruptible power supply

#### See also

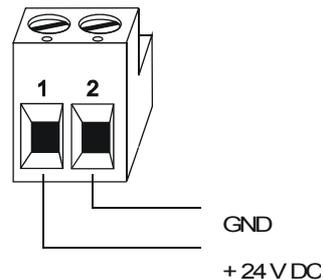
UPS (Page 6-16)

### 4.3.8 Connecting the power supply

#### Connecting the plug-in terminal rail

The power supply for the HMI device is connected at the 2-pin plug connector on the underside of the unit. Use the 2-pin terminal block supplied for this purpose. The plug-in terminal block is designed for cables with a cross-section not larger than 2.5 mm<sup>2</sup>.

The figure below illustrates the assignment of the plug-in terminal block.



Ensure that the lines are connected properly to the correct terminals. Also note the labeling for the contact pins on the back of the HMI device.

The HMI device is equipped with reverse battery protection.

---

#### Notice

##### Damage

The force of the screwdriver on the screws may cause the socket for the terminal block in the HMI device to be levered up from the printed circuit board.

Therefore, only connect the wires when the terminal block has been unplugged.

---

#### Connecting the power supply

Please refer to Technical Data for information on the power supply requirements.



---

#### Caution

Ensure safe electrical insulation of the power supply. Use only power supply units complying with IEC 364--4--41 or HD 384.04.41 (VDE 0100, Part 410).

Only use power supply units which comply to SELV (Safety Extra Low Voltage) and PELV (Protective Extra Low Voltage) standards.

The supply voltage must be within the specified range. Otherwise, HMI device failures can occur.

If the power supply for the HMI device is not grounded, the communication interface could be destroyed by the potential difference between the HMI device and CPU.

Therefore, connect the 24 V output of the power supply to the potential equalization.

---

**See also**

Technical specifications (Page 12-5)

## 4.4 Switch on and test the HMI device

### Start up

Proceed as follows:

1. Disconnect all connections to external units and remove any cards from the slots.
2. Connect the HMI device to the power supply.
3. Switch on the power supply.

If the HMI device does not start, the connections are probably reversed. In this case, switch of the power supply, reverse the connections and switch the power supply on again.

4. When the HMI device has started, connect the configuration computer or other peripheral equipment to it.

### Function test

Initiate a function test following commissioning. The HMI device is functional when one of the following conditions occurs:

- The "Transfer" dialog is displayed
- The loader is displayed
- A project is started

### Switch off HMI device

Switch off the HMI device in the following ways:

- Switch off the power supply
- Unplug the terminal strip from the HMI device

---

**Note**

If a project is already running on the HMI device, runtime must be terminated before switching the HMI device off.

Use the operating element provided by the project engineer.

---

## Operating elements and indicators

### 5.1 Front view MP 370 Touch

#### Operating the touch screen

---

##### Notice

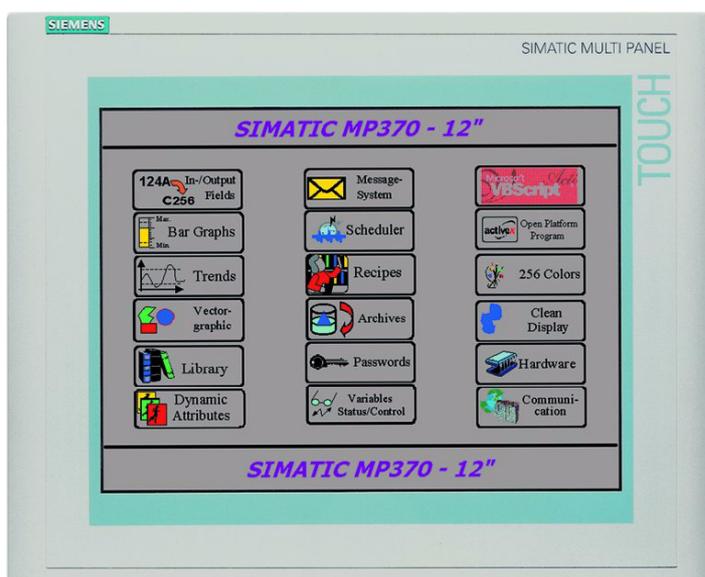
##### Damaging the touch screen

Operating the touch screen with hard, sharp or pointed items or in a heavy-handed way can lead to a considerable reduction in its service life and even to a complete failure.

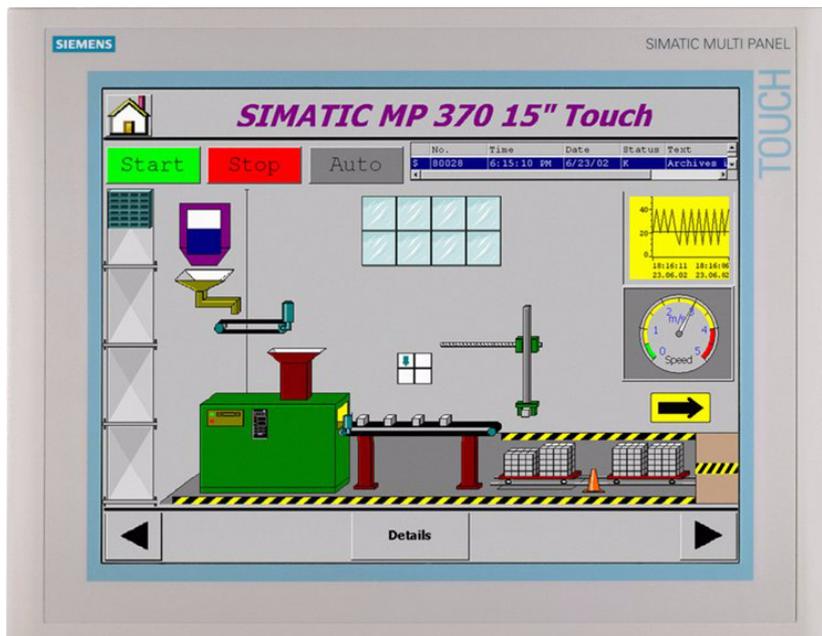
Only press the HMI device's touch screen with your fingers or a touch screen pen.

---

#### MP 370 12" Touch



## MP 370 15" Touch



## 5.2 Front view MP 370 Key

### 5.2.1 Key pads

#### Operating the keyboard

---

#### Notice

#### Damaging the keyboard

Operating the keyboard with hard, sharp or pointed items or in a heavy-handed way can lead to a considerable reduction in its service life and even to a complete failure.

Only use your fingers to operate the HMI device keyboard.

---

#### Key pads

The HMI device's keyboard is comprised of two functional keypads. Refer to the figure below.

- Softkeys
  - Keys <S1> to <S16>
  - Keys <F1> to <F20>

- System keys:
  - Alphanumeric keys
  - Cursor keys
  - Control keys

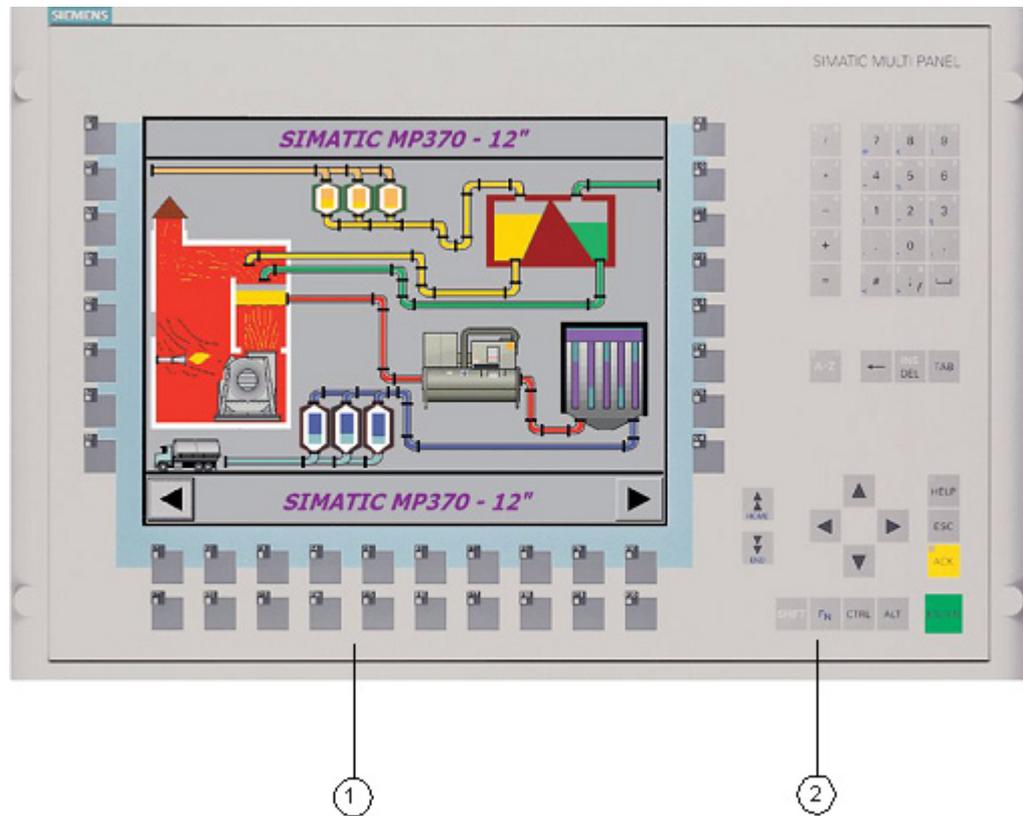


Figure 5-1 Arrangement of the keypads

- 1 Function keys
- 2 System keys

## 5.2.2 Function keys

### Function keys with global function assignment

A softkey with global function assignment always triggers the same action on the HMI device or in the PLC. The action is independent of the screen currently selected. These actions could include:

- Activate screen
- Display current error alarms
- Start screen printout (hardcopy)

All softkeys can be configured with global assignments.

---

#### Note

Unintentional actions can be triggered by a multiple key operation.

No more than two function keys can be activated simultaneously.

---

### Function keys with local function assignment

A softkey with local function assignment can trigger different actions on the HMI device or in the PLC. The actions are dependent on the currently active screen (local significance of current screen). A configuration engineer can configure an icon for each softkey. The icon is then positioned on the screen.

All function keys can be assigned locally significant functions during configuration.

Icons cannot be configured for the keys <F11> to <F20>.



#### Caution

If you press a function key after a screen change, the associated function in the new screen may be initiated before the new screen is displayed.

---

### LED control

The light-emitting diodes (LED) in the function keys can be controlled from the PLC. A luminous or flashing LED can indicate to the operator which key to press according to specific situations.

The configuration engineer must configure LED tags for the softkeys to control the LEDs.

### 5.2.3 System keys

#### Control keys

The following control keys serve higher editing and control functions:

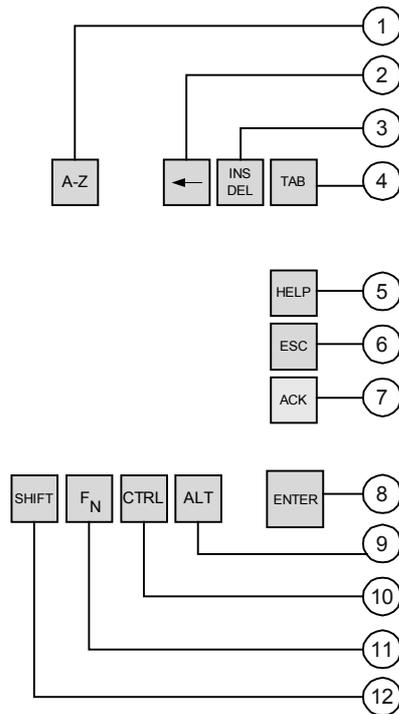


Figure 5-2 Control keys

The system keys <ACK>, <ESC>, <HELP> and <ENTER> can also be assigned functions by the project engineer.

- 1 Toggling (numbers / letters)
- 2 Delete character to the left of the current cursor position
- 3 Delete character at the current cursor position.
- 4 Tabulator
- 5 Viewing the operator note
- 6 Cancel
- 7 Acknowledge
- 8 Enter
- 9 General control function (for key combinations)
- 10 General control function (for key combinations)
- 11 Shift (special character)
- 12 Shift (upper/lower case)

### Alphanumeric keys

Use the following alphanumeric keys to enter digits, letters and special characters:

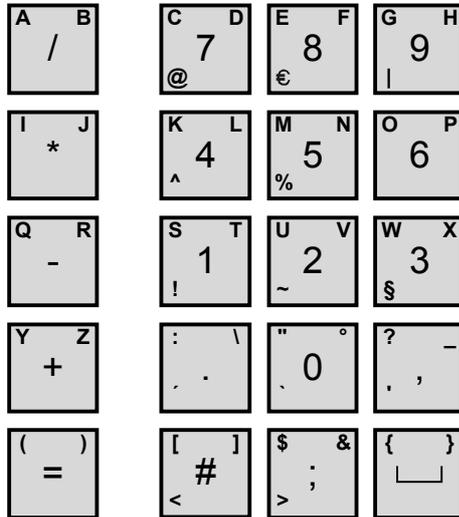


Figure 5-3 Alphanumeric keys

### Cursor keys

The cursor keys are used to move the text cursor and to navigate in screens and screen objects. The functions of the keys corresponds to the cursor keys on a standard PC keyboard.

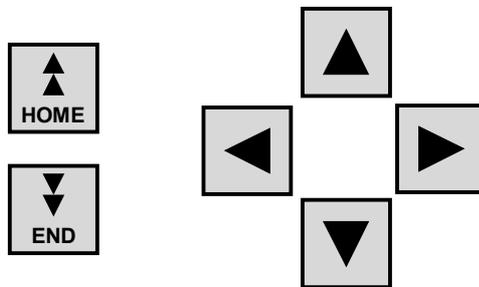


Figure 5-4 Cursor keys

The <HOME> and <END> keys can also be assigned functions by the project engineer.

## 5.2.4 Labeling the softkeys

### Labeling

In the factory state, the softkeys on the keyboard unit are labeled as follows:

- F1 to F20 and
- S1 to S16.

A total of four labeling strips for the softkeys are inserted in the HMI device from the back. Use these strips to label the HMI device specifically for the system.

## Changing labeling strips



### Warning

After opening the switching cabinet, certain system parts become accessible which may be conducting dangerously high voltage.

1. Set the unit down with the front panel at the bottom.
2. Remove the existing labeling strips.
3. Insert the new labeling strips in the slots of the front panel with the inscription facing down. The individual positions are indicated in the figure by means of arrows.

### Caution

Wait for the ink to dry before inserting strips. A keyboard foil which is dirty on the inside cannot be cleaned and can only be replaced at the manufacturer's factory.

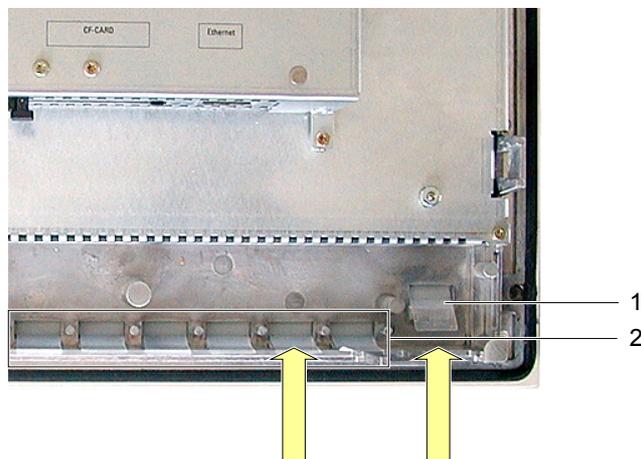


Figure 5-5 Placing the labeling strips on the MP 370 keys

- 1 Labeling strips for ten keys
- 2 Labeling strips for two keys

### Create labeling strips

Only use transparent foil to create your own labeling strips so that the LEDs in the softkeys remain visible. Label the foil either with a printer or a waterproof felt-tip pen. Cut the strips according to the specifications.

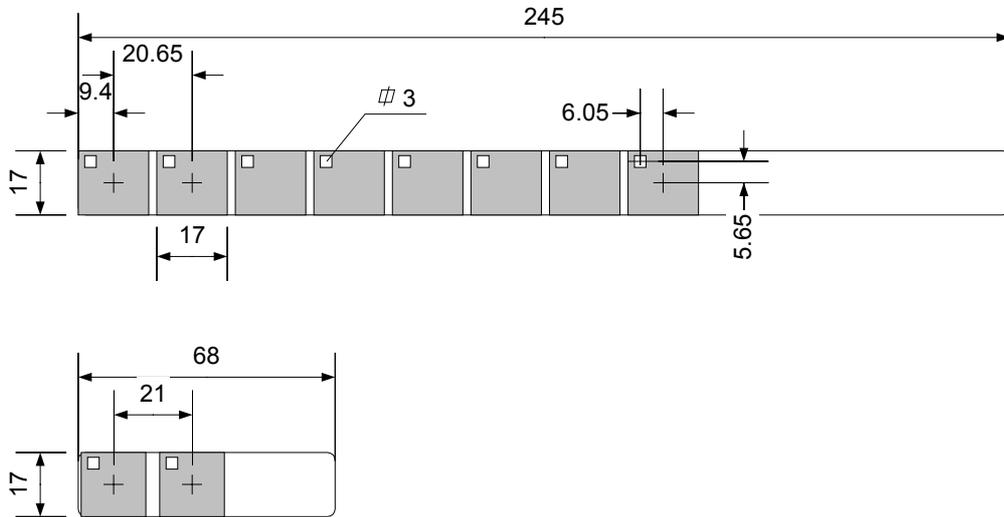


Figure 5-6 Labeling strip dimensions

### Printing the labeling strips

The templates for the labeling strips are in the "Slide370.doc" file on the "WinCC flexible" installation CD in the "\Support\Documents" folder. The file can be edited with MS Word for example.

Pay attention to the information provided in the file.

## 5.3 Operation with external keyboard/mouse

### Connection

An external keyboard or mouse can be connected to the USB interface on the HMI device. Connection and disconnection are possible during normal operation of the HMI device ("hot plug in/out").

Operation of the HMI device via an external keyboard/mouse is particularly recommended during the commissioning and test phases.

---

#### Notice

USB mouse:

- Use a standard mouse.

USB keyboard:

- Use a standard keyboard with a USA/International keyboard layout.
- Operation of the configured function keys is not possible via the external keyboard.

Commercially available USB devices do not normally meet the higher industrial demands relating to interference resistance and can have negative effects on the HMI device.

---

### Operation

Operation of the HMI device via a mouse is only slightly different from operation using the touch screen. After connecting a mouse, the mouse pointer  appears on the screen.

When the mouse pointer is positioned on an operable button, the mouse pointer symbol changes  .



---

#### Caution

When using a keyboard unit, do not operate the integrated membrane keyboard and external USB keyboard simultaneously. You may trigger an unintended action.

---

### See also

Connect external keyboard and mouse (Page 4-9)



Everything for your HMI running

✉ [sales@vicpas.com](mailto:sales@vicpas.com)

☎ +86-15876525394

## Operating system and configuration

### 6.1 HMI device loader

#### Loader

The following figure illustrates the loader which appears briefly during the startup phase of the HMI device.



Figure 6-1 HMI device loader

The loader also appears when runtime has ended.

The loader buttons have the following functions:

- Press the "Transfer" button to switch the HMI device to transfer mode.
- Press the "Start" button to start runtime with a project loaded on the HMI device.
- Press the "Control Panel" button to access the Windows CE Control Panel in which various settings can be defined. The options for the transfer mode can be set here, for example.
- Press the "Taskbar" button to display the Windows toolbar when the Windows CE Start menu is open.

#### Protect loader with password

It is possible to protect the Loader from unauthorized access by assigning a password.

If the password is not entered, only the "Transfer" and "Start" buttons are available. This prevents incorrect operation and increases system or machine security since no changes can be made to the settings.

---

**Notice**

If the password for the loader has been forgotten, it is only possible to access the Control Panel again after updating the operating system.

All the data on the HMI device are overwritten when to operating system is updated.

---

**See also**

Open Control Panel (Page 6-2)

## 6.2 Windows CE Control Panel

### 6.2.1 Open Control Panel

#### Windows CE Control Panel

The Windows CE Control Panel can be used to modify the following system settings:

- Date/time
- Network
- Device properties, e.g. brightness and calibration of touch screens
- Regional settings
- Screensaver
- Screen keyboard
- Volume (touch acknowledgement)
- Printer
- Backup/Recovery
- Transfer
- UPS (optional)

#### Open Control Panel

The following options are available to open the Control Panel:

- During the startup phase:

Press the "Control Panel" button in the loader to open the Windows CE Control Panel. It may be necessary to enter a password.

- During normal operation:
  - Provided one is configured, activate the operating element that is linked to the "Open Control Panel" system function.
  - The Control Panel can also be opened from the Windows CE Start menu by selecting "Settings ► Control Panel".

Keyboard unit:

The Windows CE Start menu can be opened by pressing the key combination  + .

Touch panel unit:

The Windows CE Start menu can be opened by pressing the  button twice (locking key) on the alphanumeric screen keyboard.

## Result

The Control Panel is opened.

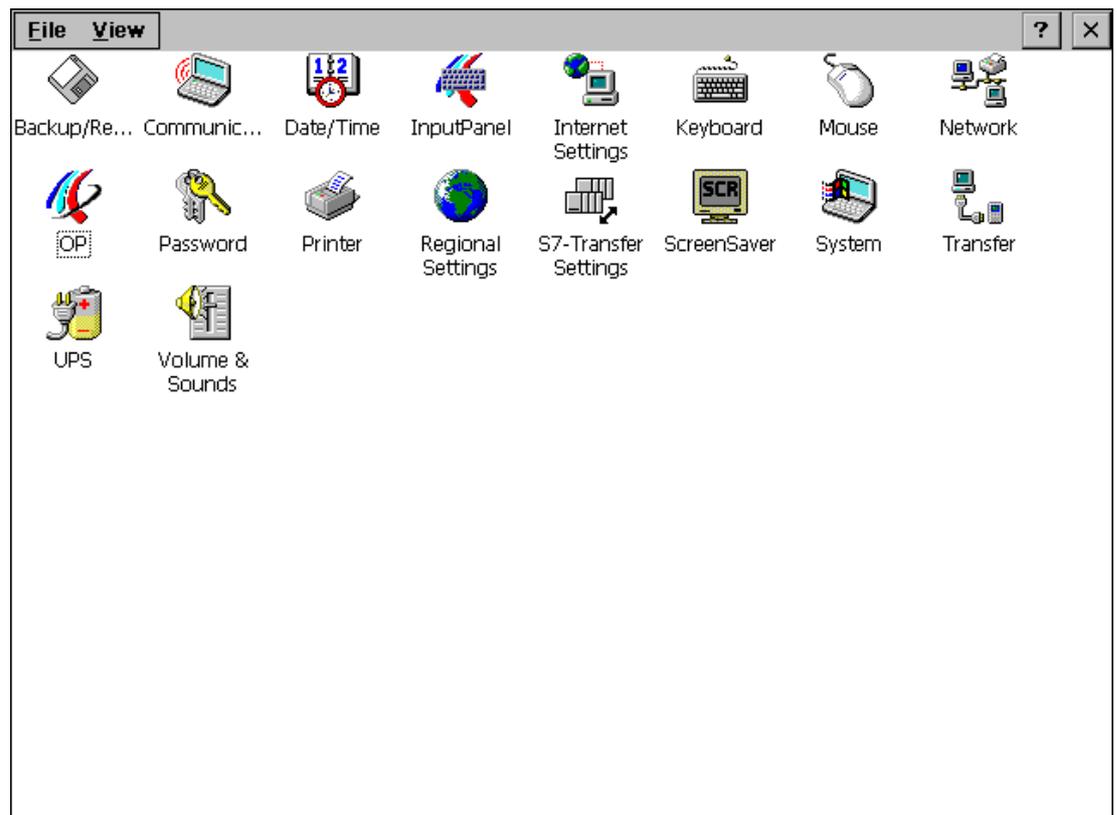


Figure 6-2 Windows CE Control Panel

## Change settings



---

### Caution

End Runtime before making changes to system settings; otherwise the changes will not take effect, e.g. for a transfer operation.

---

Proceed as follows to change settings using the Windows CE Control Panel:

1. Stop the runtime software before modifying any system settings. Use the relevant operating element provided in the project.
2. Open the Control Panel as described above.
3. Change the system settings in the Control Panel.
4. Close the Control Panel:

Touch panel unit:

Press the  button.

Keyboard unit:

Press the  key and use the cursor keys to select the menu command "File ▶ Close".

Confirm the selection by pressing the  key.

5. Start runtime via the loader.

---

### Note

#### Closing Control Panel dialogs using keyboard devices

Proceed as follows if dialogs, which are open on the HMI device, cannot be closed:

1. Open another dialog in the Control Panel.
  2. Press the key combination  +  to access another open dialog.
  3. Close the dialog by pressing  or .
  4. Repeat steps 2 and 3, as necessary until all the dialogs are closed.
-

## 6.2.2 Communication

### "Communication" option



This function is used to change the name used by the HMI device on the network.

### See also

Open Control Panel (Page 6-2)

Configuring the HMI device for network operation (Page 6-18)

## 6.2.3 Date/Time

### "Date/Time" option



This is used to set the date, time and time zone for the HMI device.

### Synchronizing date/time with the PLC

The date and time of the HMI device can be synchronized with the PLC, if this has been configured in the project and the PLC program. The two PLC jobs 14 ("Set time") and 15 ("Set date") are provided for this.

PLC jobs 40 and 41 can be used to transfer the date and time from the HMI device to the PLC.

---

#### Notice

Synchronize the date and time when time-controlled responses should be triggered in the PLC by the HMI device.

---

The HMI device can only buffer the date and time for a few days if no power is supplied. If the HMI device is not to be used for a number of days, it is recommended to synchronize the date and time via the PLC.

Further information on this is available in the "WinCC flexible Communication" user manual.

**See also**

Open Control Panel (Page 6-2)

### 6.2.4 Input panel

#### "InputPanel" option



This function defines the position and size of the screen keyboard when it appears on the HMI device.

#### Procedure

1. Select the "Input Panel" option.
2. Move the screen keyboard to the relevant position.
3. To change the size, press the "Start Resize" button.
4. Store the new settings by pressing the "Save" button.
5. Close the option by pressing the  button or the  key.

---

#### Note

In order to correctly save the size and position of the on-screen keyboard in a fail-safe way, the alphanumeric representation must be selected prior to the Save operation.

---

**See also**

Open Control Panel (Page 6-2)

### 6.2.5 Network

#### "Network" option



Network properties are configured here.

## See also

Configuring the HMI device for network operation (Page 6-18)  
Open Control Panel (Page 6-2)

## 6.2.6 OP

### "OP" option



The following setting options are provided by the "OP" option in the Control Panel:

- Set brightness
- Calibrate the touch screen (for touch panels)
- Display device data
- Backup non-resistant data

### Set brightness

1. Open the "Display" tab in the "OP Properties" dialog.

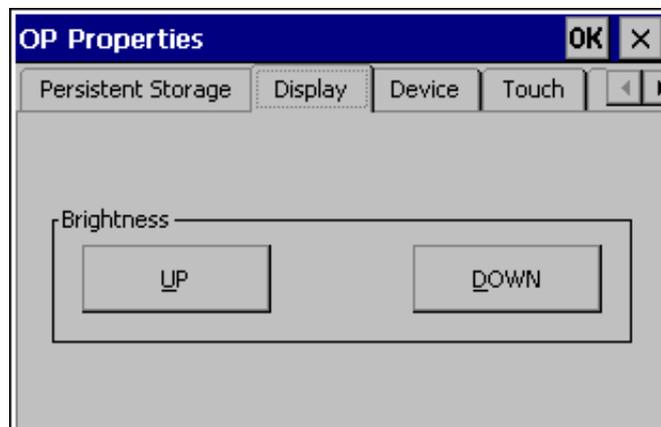


Figure 6-3 "OP Properties" dialog, "Display" tab

2. Change the brightness setting of the screen using the "UP" and "DOWN" buttons in the "Brightness" group.
3. In the case of the touch panel, close the dialog using the "OK" button. In the case of the keyboard unit, move the focus to the tab heading by pressing <ENTER>.

In the case of keyboard devices, the brightness can be changed outside the Windows CE Control Panel with the following key combinations:

 +  Increases the brightness.

 +  Reduces the brightness.

---

**Note**

Wait at least 10 sec. after changing the setting before switching the HMI device off. Otherwise, the changes will not be saved.

---

**Calibrate touch screen**

**Purpose**

Depending on the installation position and viewing angle, it is possible that a more or less strong parallax may occur when operating the touch panel screen. In order to prevent resulting operating errors, the screen can be calibrated during the start-up phase and normal operation.

**Procedure**

1. Open the "Touch" tab in the "OP Properties" dialog.



Figure 6-4 "OP Properties" dialog, "Touch" tab

2. Press the "Recalibrate" button to start the calibration process.  
Five calibration crosses appear in succession on the screen. Follow the instructions provided on the screen and touch the respective calibration cross.
3. Apply calibration:  
Touch any point on the screen after the calibration process for the new calibration data to take effect.

4. Reject calibration:  
Wait 30 seconds (until the counter reaches zero) before rejecting the new calibration data.  
If calibration is not performed correctly, the new values are not accepted.
5. Press the "OK" button to close the dialog.

### Configured function

If the "Calibrate Touch Screen" function has been linked to an operating element in your project, the touch screen can be calibrated during operation. The triggering operator control object can be configured in such a way that a password is required to calibrate the touch screen.

The calibration process is identical with steps 2, 3 and 4 described for the start-up phase.

### Persistent storage of registrations

1. Open the "Persistent Storage" tab in the "OP Properties" dialog.

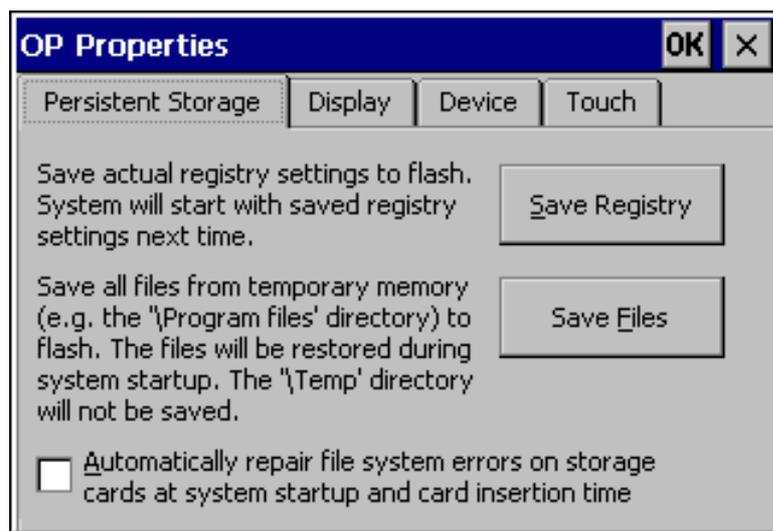


Figure 6-5 "OP Properties" dialog, "Persistent Storage" tab

2. Press the Save Registry button to start the storage process.  
The current registration settings are stored in the Flash memory.
3. Press the Save Files button to start copying the files in the RAM file system to the Flash memory.  
Following a restart, these saved files will be copied back to the file system.
4. In the case of the touch panel, close the dialog using the "OK" button. In the case of the keyboard unit, move the focus to the tab heading by pressing <ENTER>.

### Display device data

1. Open the "Device" tab in the "OP Properties" dialog.  
Various device data is displayed.

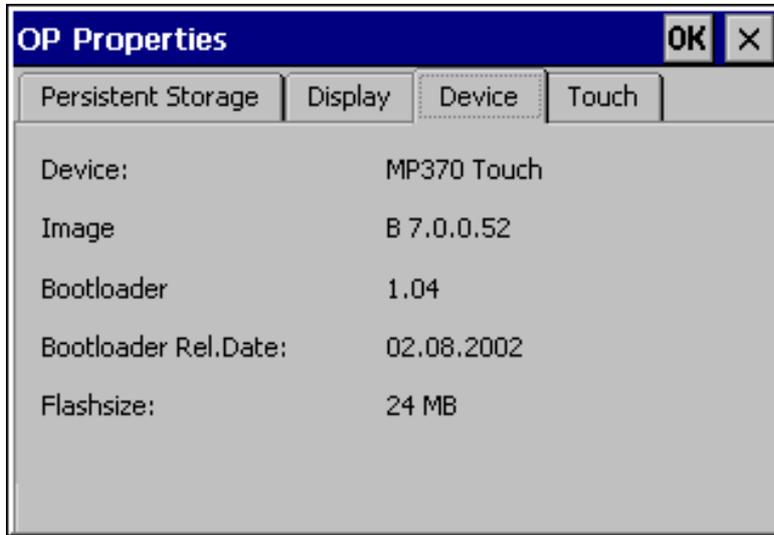


Figure 6-6 "OP Properties" dialog, "Device" tab

2. Close the dialog using the "OK" button in the case of touch panels. Press the <ENTER> button in the case of keyboard units.

### See also

Open Control Panel (Page 6-2)

## 6.2.7 Printer

### "Printer" option



A printer can be selected and set up using the "Printer" option. Some settings are only relevant for printing a hardcopy of the screen contents and have no influence on the alarm logging, e.g. color or quality of graphics printing.

### Adjustable options

The available settings depend on the selected printer.

### **Printer**

Select the printer from the printer list on the connected HMI device.

### **Port**

Select the port and baud rate used by the HMI device to transfer data to the printer, e.g. IF2: 9600.

### **Net Path**

If a network has been configured, enter a path for a network printer here. Select "Network" as the port.

### **Paper Size**

Select the paper size used in the printer, e.g. A4 or Letter.

### **Draft Mode**

Define the quality of the graphics printout. If the option is activated, printout is performed in draft quality. If deactivated, the printout is in high quality.

### **Color**

Define if a color printer will print in color or black and white.

### **Print Range**

Define whether only the selected area should be printed or the entire contents.

### **Orientation**

Define whether the page should be printed in Portrait or Landscape,

## Margins

The margin values entered here are ignored by the HMI device.

---

### Note

If a serial printer is connected, the following printer settings are required:

- RS 232, whereby only the RxD, TxD and GND signals are required,
  - 8 data bits
  - 1 stop bit
  - No parity
  - Baud rate between 9600 and 57600, printer-dependent
  - XON / XOFF protocol.
- 

## Default setting

When the HMI device is supplied, the following default settings are defined:

- Printer: EPSON 9 matrix printer
- Port: IF2
- Baud rate: 9600 bps

## See also

Basic principles (Page 6-17)

Interface description (Page 12-8)

Open Control Panel (Page 6-2)

## 6.2.8 Regional Settings

### "Regional Settings" option



Region-specific settings can be defined here. for example:

- Date and time format display
- Displaying numbers

The factory settings on the HMI device are German format.

---

#### Note

The settings defined in the "Regional Settings" option do not cause a change of languages in the Windows CE dialogs, e.g. the Control Panel. English is always used.

---

### See also

Open Control Panel (Page 6-2)

## 6.2.9 Screen Saver

### "Screensaver" option



It is possible to define a period of time (in minutes) for automatic activation of the screensaver on the HMI device. The screensaver settings are defined in the "Screensaver" option of the Windows CE Control Panels.

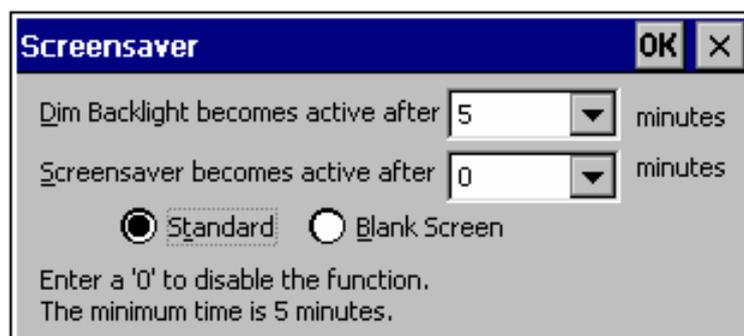


Figure 6-7 "Screen Saver" dialog

The screen saver is automatically activated if the HMI device is not operated within the defined period of time.

If a value of 0 is entered, the screen saver is deactivated.

---

**Note**

When the screensaver is activated, the back-lighting is automatically dimmed.

---

The screen saver is deactivated on pressing any key or touching the touch screen. The function assigned to that key/button is not triggered.

**Dim back-lighting**

For technical reasons, the brightness of the screen back-lighting is reduced with increased operational use. To increase the service life of the back-lighting, use the "Screensaver" option in the Windows CE Control Panel to set the period of time after which the back-lighting should be dimmed.

The back-lighting is automatically reduced if the HMI device is not operated within the defined period of time.

On entering the value 0, dimming of the back-lighting is deactivated.

---

**Notice**

The screen can still be viewed with a reduced back-lighting.

The back-lighting is reactivated on pressing any key or touching the touch screen. The function assigned to that key/button is triggered.

---

**See also**

Open Control Panel (Page 6-2)

## 6.2.10 System

### "System" option



The "System" option can be used to define the size of the memory for the DRAM file system (storage memory). It defines how much memory can be used by the applications. Values can be modified using a slider control. The standard amount of memory in the DRAM file system for applications is 6 Mb.

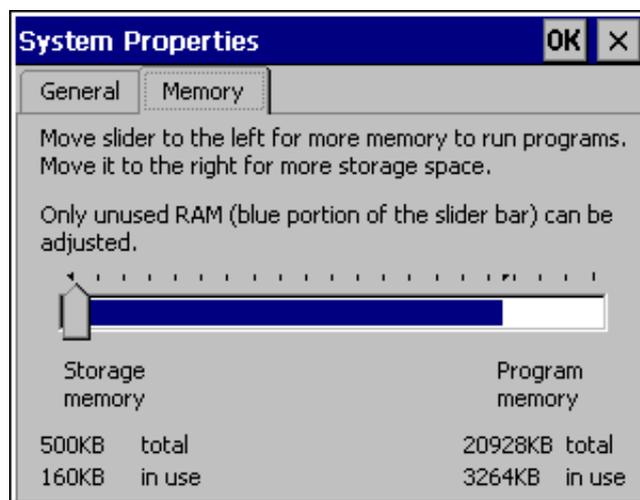


Figure 6-8 "System Properties" dialog



#### Caution

If too much DRAM file memory is provided, WinCC flexible runtime has too little working memory available. There is no guarantee that your project will run properly if settings are wrong.

#### Note

##### Operation of additional applications together with WinCC flexible

The memory requirements of projects in WinCC flexible has changed in comparison to ProTool.

If user-specific additional applications should be operated on the HMI device together with a WinCC flexible project, the functionality required on the HMI device must be tested and, if necessary, the scope of the project or additional application reduced.

See also

Open Control Panel (Page 6-2)

### 6.2.11 UPS

#### Uninterruptible power supply (UPS)

To prevent the loss of data in the event of a power failure, a UPS can ensure a controlled shutdown of the HMI device. An external UPS detects when the power supply has failed and signals this to the HMI device via the serial interface.

The UPS can only be loaded as an option.

#### "UPS" option



The UPS driver is installed as an add-on using the ProSave tool. The associated UPS icon only appears in the Windows CE Control Panel after it has been installed via ProSave.

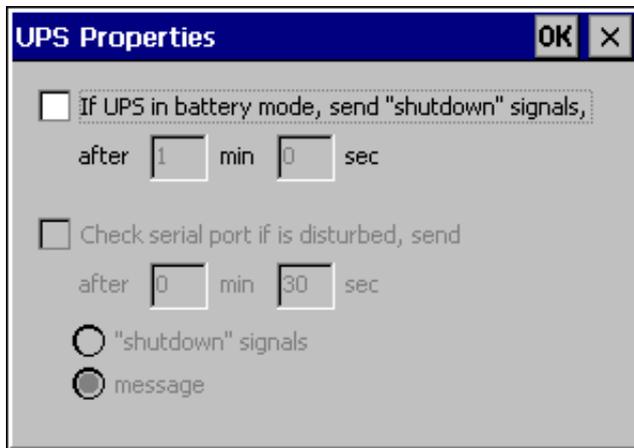


Figure 6-9 "UPS Properties" dialog

It is possible to define how long the power failure may continue without the runtime being shut down. The driver is suitable for the SITOP DC-UPS Module A.

See also

Open Control Panel (Page 6-2)

## 6.2.12 Volume & Sounds

### "Volume & Sounds" option



This is used to change the settings for acoustic signals and operating acknowledgement. The "Volume" tab includes the following options:

- acoustic acknowledgement for touch operation
- volume control

The "Sounds" tab is irrelevant for runtime settings.

### See also

Open Control Panel (Page 6-2)

## 6.3 Network operation

### 6.3.1 Basic principles

#### Purpose

The standard HMI device is equipped with an on-board Ethernet interface. Implementing the network function enables the HMI device to be used for:

- Logging data via the network
- Printing via a network printer
- Storing recipe data records in the network
- exporting recipe data records in the network
- importing recipe data records from the network
- Transferring projects
- Backing up data

---

#### Notice

The HMI device can only be implemented in TCP/IP networks.

The HMI device only has client functionality in the PC network. This means that users can access files of a subscriber with TCP/IP server functionality from the HMI device via the network. However, it is not possible to access files on the HMI device via the network from a PC.

---

---

**Note**

Information on communication using SIMATIC S7 via Ethernet is provided in the "WinCC flexible Communication" user manual.

---

## Requirements

Within a TCP/IP network, computers are addressed by means of network names. These network names are translated from a DNS or WINS server to TCP/IP addresses. Direct addressing via TCP/IP addresses is not currently supported by the operating system. Therefore, to ensure the functionality of the HMI device in a TCP/IP network, it is useful to employ a DNS or WINS server. Appropriate servers are available in common TCP/IP networks. Please contact your network administrator.

## Printing via a network printer

The HMI device's operating system does not support the direct alarm logging via a network printer. All other printer functions such as hardcopy or shift log, are possible via the network without restriction.

## 6.3.2 Configuring the HMI device for network operation

### Overview

The HMI device must be appropriately configured before setting into network operation. The configuration is basically divided into the following steps:

- Set computer name of the HMI device
- Configure the network address.
- Set login information
- Save settings

### Preparations

Before beginning the configuration, request the specific network parameters from the network administrator. The following information is of particular interest:

- Does the network use DHCP for dynamic assignment of network addresses? If not, get a new TCP/IP network address for the HMI device.
- What is the TCP/IP address of the default gateway?
- Which DNS addresses has the name server?  
(If DNS is used in the network)
- Which WINS addresses has the name server?  
(If WINS is used in the network)

## Procedure

The following instructions describe how to define the general settings. Additional steps or procedures may be necessary depending on the network infrastructure.

1. Open the Control Panel.
2. Set computer name of the HMI device.

In order to identify the HMI device within the network, it must be assigned a unique name (device name) within the network using the Control Panel option "Communication"



Apply the settings and close the dialog by pressing <ENTER>.

3. Configure the network address.



- Use the "Network" option to open the network configuration.
- Select an appropriate network driver in the "Adapters" tab.  
Select "Onboard LAN" for HMI devices with an integrated Ethernet card. Select NE2000-compatible driver for other network cards.
- Press the "Properties" button in order to configure the network characteristics of the network card used.

Complete the dialog according to the network driver selected.

- If your network uses DHCP, skip this step.  
Select the "IP Address" tab then the "Specify an IP Address" option.  
Enter the TCP/IP address of the HMI devices (e.g. 233.239.2.100), subnet mask (e.g. 255.255.255.0) and default gateway (e.g. 223.239.2.200).
- Enter the name server address of the network in the "Name Servers" tab.  
Close the dialog with <ENTER> or press "OK" to apply the settings.

4. Set login information.

In order to correctly log on to the network, enter your user permissions in the "Identification" tab. Enter the user name valid for the network or the network server and the associated password (max. 8 characters).

If the network administrates users via domain controllers, enter the relevant domain controller name.

Close the dialog with <ENTER> or press "OK" to apply the settings.

5. Save the settings.

- Switch off the HMI device.
- Before switching the HMI device on, insert the network cable in the corresponding interface so that a unique IP address can be assigned during the start-up phase.
- Switch the HMI device on again.

## See also

Open Control Panel (Page 6-2)

### 6.3.3 Test network

#### Procedure

When the HMI device has been configured for network operation, connect the network server via Windows Explorer to test the network. Proceed as follows:

1. Start Windows Explorer via the Windows CE Start menu.

- Keyboard unit:

The Windows CE Start menu can be opened by pressing the key combination  + .

- Touch panel unit:

- The Windows CE Start menu can be opened by pressing the  button twice (locking key) on the alphanumeric screen keyboard.

Select the "Windows Explorer" application from the "Programs" program group.

2. Use the "Address" input field to enter the UNC name of the folder or drive provided on the server.

Example:

The server is called: mrnbg2

The name provided is: data

The resulting UNC name is: \\mrnbg2\data

---

#### Note

The use of TCP/IP addresses to address PCs is not supported by the operating system. For example, the use of the UNC names "\\130.170.10.45\data" is not permitted.

---

3. After entering the UNC name, press the <ENTER> key.

#### Result

When all the network settings are correct, Windows Explorer displays the files located under the directory provided on the TCP/IP server.

---

#### Note

In addition, the network program "ipconfig" is available in the operating system.

---

## See also

Configuring the HMI device for network operation (Page 6-18)

### 6.3.4 Configuring network access

#### Requirements

The network is set up on the HMI device.

#### Procedure

In order to use the network functions in the WinCC flexible configuration software, specify the relevant UNC assigned names at those points where paths have been entered for files or directories.

#### Example 1: Logs

If you want to perform logging on the server in the example above, replace the predefined archive memory location "\\Storage Card\Loggs" with the UNC assigned name for the server, e.g. "\\mrbg2\daten\Loggs".

#### Example 2: Recipe data records

In order to store recipe data records in the network, replace the predefined path name "\\Flash\Recipes" with the UNC assigned name for the server, i.e. "\\mrbg2\data\recipes". The same applies for exporting and importing recipe data records using the functions "ExportDataRecords" and "ImportDataRecords". In this case, replace the parameter "File name" with the UNC assigned name for the server.

## See also

Configuring the HMI device for network operation (Page 6-18)

Test network (Page 6-20)



Everything for your HMI running

✉ [sales@vicpas.com](mailto:sales@vicpas.com)

☎ +86-15876525394

## Prepare and backup project

### 7.1 Transfer project to the HMI device

#### 7.1.1 Commissioning for the first time

##### Introduction

When commissioning for the first time, there is no configuration on the HMI device. In order to transfer the necessary project data and the runtime software from the configuration computer to the HMI device, proceed as follows, observing the sequence.

---

##### Notice

When starting the first time, observe the safety information on reverse poling.

---

---

##### Caution

Always terminate the runtime software before switching off the voltage supply in order to prevent loss of data.

Press the operating element linked to the "StopRuntime" system function in the project to stop runtime. Wait until the HMI device displays the loader and then switch off the power supply.

---

---

##### Note

During the commissioning phase, it is possible to connect an external USB keyboard or mouse via the USB interface.

---

##### Procedure

1. Connect the HMI device to the configuration computer using a suitable standard cable. Use one of the following interfaces depending on the type of transfer:
  - IF2 (serial)
  - IF1B (MPI/PROFIBUS DP)
  - USB

- Ethernet

Transfer via modem is also possible.

Default setting: Serial connection

2. Switch on the power supply to the HMI device.

When the HMI device is started up, the system automatically switches from the Loader to transfer mode.

3. Press the "Cancel" button to switch to the Loader.
4. Press the "Control Panel" button to switch to the Windows CE Control Panel.
5. Adapt the interface setting (serial, MPI, USB or Ethernet) in the transfer settings.

Default setting: Serial connection

6. Close the Control Panel and switch to the transfer mode.
7. Start the project transfer operation on the configuration computer. Please refer to the "WinCC flexible" user manual for more information on the settings required on the configuration computer for the transfer operation.

## Result

The configuration computer checks the connection to the HMI device. If the connection is not available or defective, the configuration computer issues the corresponding error message.

If a transfer operation from the configuration computer is terminated as a result of a compatibility conflict, the operating system of the HMI device must be updated.

If the connection is correct, the new project data are transferred to the HMI device. Following successful transfer, the project is started and the Start screen of the transferred project appears.

## Set date/time

The date and time must be updated in the following cases:

- Initial startup
- If the HMI device is disconnected from the power supply for an extended period without a backup battery

## See also

Transfer mode options (Page 7-5)

Connecting the power supply (Page 4-15)

HMI device loader (Page 6-1)

Operating touch objects (Page 9-2)

## 7.1.2 Recommissioning

### Purpose

When recommissioning, the existing configuration on the HMI device is replaced by another. To this end, a new project is transferred from the configuration computer to the HMI device.

The procedure for transferring the project required for operation from the configuration computer to the HMI device is described in "Transfer".

The following options are available for switching the HMI device to transfer mode:

- Starting transfer mode manually during the HMI device startup phase
- Starting transfer mode manually by pressing the applicable operating element in the project when the HMI device is in operation
- Starting transfer mode automatically while the HMI device is in operation

## 7.2 Transfer

### 7.2.1 Start transfer manually

#### Procedure

1. Connect the HMI device to the configuration computer using a suitable standard cable. Use one of the following interfaces depending on the type of transfer:
  - IF2 (serial)
  - IF1B (MPI/PROFIBUS DP)
  - USB
  - EthernetTransfer via modem is also possible.
2. Switch on the power supply to the HMI device.
3. Adapt the interface setting (serial, MPI, USB or Ethernet) in the transfer settings.
4. Close the Control Panel and switch to the transfer mode.
5. Start project transfer on the configuration computer.

#### Result

The configuration computer checks the connection to the HMI device. If the connection is not available or is faulty, the configuration computer issues an error alarm to that effect.

If downloading from the configuration computer is terminated as a result of a compatibility conflict, the HMI device's operating system must be updated.

If the connection is correct, the new project is transferred to the HMI device. Following successful transfer, the project is started and the Start screen of the transferred project appears.

**See also**

Transfer mode options (Page 7-5)

Update operating system (Page 7-18)

## 7.2.2 Start transfer automatically

**Overview**

The HMI device can automatically switch to transfer mode during normal operation when a transfer is started on the connected configuration computer. The transfer operation is completed without intervention on the HMI device. Therefore, this option is particularly suited for the test phase of a new project.

To switch to transfer mode from active operation, open the "Transfer Settings" window on the HMI device and select the required connection and the corresponding "Remote Control" function.

---

**Notice**

When the "Remote Control" option is activated, Runtime is automatically ended and the switch is made to transfer mode. Runtime cannot be ended if dialogs are open or a transfer operation has been started on the HMI device.

Close the dialog or cancel the transfer process on the configuration computer.

Following the start-up phase, disable the automatic transfer option to prevent inadvertently switching the HMI device to transfer mode in a running system, thereby ending Runtime. To do this, deactivate the "Remote Control" options in the transfer settings defined for the HMI device.

---

**See also**

Transfer mode options (Page 7-5)

### 7.2.3 Transfer mode options

#### Transfer mode options



The following options can be set for transfer mode:

- The HMI device can be switched to transfer mode automatically when in normal operation as soon as a transfer is started on the connected configuration computer.
- Select a specific connection type so that transfer can only occur either via a serial connection, MPI/PROFIBUS-DP, USB or Ethernet connection.

---

#### Note

Do not make any other changes if the Runtime software is running or the HMI device is in transfer mode.

---

#### Setting the communication channel

The "Channel" tab in the Transfer Settings menu can be used to activate the required communication channel and the "Remote Control" checkbox. In addition to the serial communication channel, a second channel can also be selected for transfer of data from the configuration computer to the HMI device.

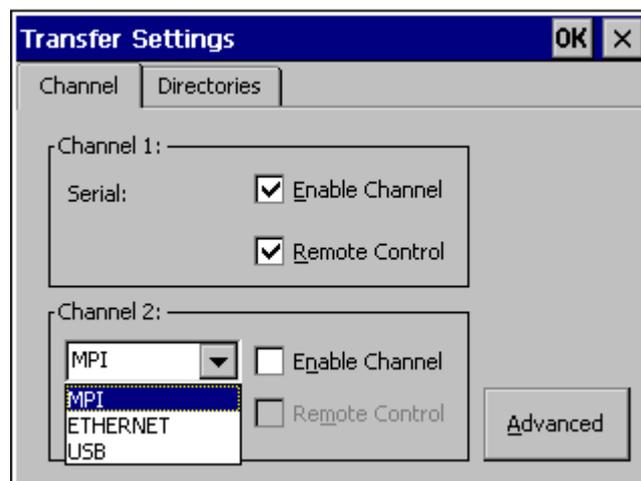


Figure 7-1 "Transfer Settings" dialog, "Channel" tab

Press the "Advanced" button to define the following settings:

- For transfer MPI or PROFIBUS-DP, define the "Address" bus parameter and "Transmission Rate" and "Highest Station" network parameters.
- Define the driver for transfer via Ethernet.



---

**Warning**

When the "Remote Control" checkbox is active, ensure that the HMI device is not inadvertently switched to transfer mode from the configuration computer.

In the case of PROFIBUS DP, changes may only be made here for commissioning purposes.

For each modification to the PROFIBUS DP settings, the HMI devices set up only one corresponding standard bus parameter set. Under unfavorable conditions, this can lead to faults on the PROFIBUS.

In order to calculate the bus parameters exactly, the entire bus topology must be known.

Correct definition of the bus parameters for Runtime is automatically ensured through the integrated operation of WinCC flexible in SIMATIC STEP 7.

---

---

**Notice**

If a serial printer is connected to the HMI device, deactivate it by selecting "Remote Control" checkbox for the serial communication channel. Otherwise, printing is not possible.

When a configuration is transferred from the configuration computer to the HMI device, enable a communication channel using the "Enable Channel" option.

If an interface is occupied by other programs, transfer cannot take place via that interface.

---

---

**Note**

The bus parameters for the MPI transfer, e.g. MPI address, baud rate, etc., are read from the project currently loaded on the HMI device.

The settings for MPI transfer can be modified. To do this, you must first end Runtime, modify the settings, and switch to transfer mode. When Runtime is started subsequently, the bus parameters are overwritten with the values from the project.

---

## Transfer mode directories

The "Directories" tab can be used to specify the following paths (refer to figure below).

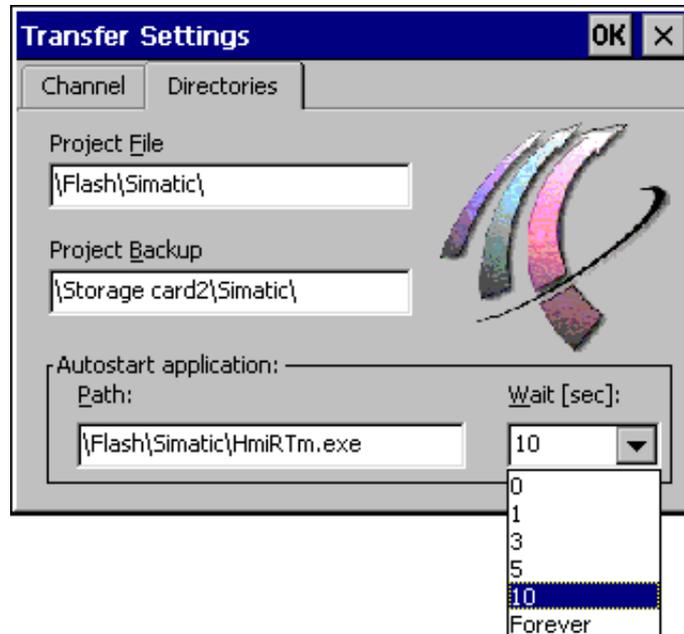


Figure 7-2 "Transfer Settings" dialog, "Directories" tab

## Project File

The predefined storage location for the project file can be changed here. The internal Flash memory or external Flash cards can be set. During the next transfer operation, the project will be stored in the storage location specified.

## Project Backup

Here, you change the default storage location for the source file of your project. This file can be used for restoring (uploading) the configuration. External Flash cards or network connections can be set.

## Autostart application

- **Path**

The memory location for Runtime is defined here. This is the application used to run your project in Windows CE.
- **Wait**

Here, you set the amount of time (in seconds) that the Loader is to be displayed before Runtime is started (1 s, 3 s, 5 s, 10 s, or constantly). If Runtime is not available, the device automatically switches to transfer mode.

---

**Notice**

With the exception of "Wait," do not change the default settings in these fields if you are working with WinCC flexible. Otherwise, the HMI device can no longer start your project.

---

Press the "OK" button or <ENTER> key to confirm the settings currently defined for the transfer options. Ensure that no buttons have been selected. The dialog is closed and the Windows CE Control Panel is displayed.

Press the close symbol or <ESC> key to close the dialog and open the Windows CE Control Panel. Any modifications made to the settings are rejected.

---

**Note**

If the HMI device is in transfer mode while changes are made to the transfer settings, the settings only take effect after the transfer function is restarted. This can occur when the Control Panel is selected via the Windows Start menu in order to modify the transfer properties.

---

## 7.2.4 Testing the project

### Introduction

There are two options on the HMI device for testing a new project:

- Test project offline

Testing offline means that communication between the HMI device and PLC is interrupted while the test is being carried out.

- Test project online

Testing online means that the HMI device and PLC communicate with each other during the test.

It is advisable to perform both tests starting with the "Offline test" followed by the "Online test."

---

**Note**

**Testing on a configuration computer**

A project can also be tested on a configuration computer using the Simulator. Detailed information on this is available in the "WinCC flexible" user guide and in the WinCC flexible online help.

You should always test the project afterwards on the HMI device where the project will be used.

---

Check the following:

1. Check that configured screens are displayed correctly
2. Check screen hierarchy.
3. Test input objects
4. Test softkeys.
5. Test that tag data can be entered.

The test increases the certainty that the project will run error-free on the HMI device.

### Conditions for the offline test

- The project is on the HMI device.
- The project is offline.

Open the selected project on the configuration computer. Select "Communication > Connections" and switch to "Online: Off". Transfer the project to the HMI device.

Alternatively, the operating mode can be changed by means of an operating element in the project. Use the operating element to switch the project offline.

---

#### Note

During the test phase, it is recommended that the transfer operation be started during operation.

---

### Procedure

Use "Offline" mode to test the individual project functions on the HMI device without them being affected by the PLC. PLC tags are, therefore, not updated.

Test the project operating elements and displays to the extent possible without connecting to the PLC. Proceed as follows:

1. Check that configured objects are displayed correctly.
2. Check screen hierarchy.
3. Check input fields.
4. Test softkeys.

### Conditions for the online test

- The project is on the HMI device.
- The project is online.

Open the selected project on the configuration computer. Select "Communication > Connections" and switch to "Online: On". Transfer the project to the HMI device.

Alternatively, the operating mode can be changed by means of an operating element in the project. Use the operating element to switch the project online.

---

**Note**

During the test phase, it is recommended that the transfer operation be started during operation.

---

**Procedure**

Use "Online" mode to test the individual project functions on the HMI device with influence being exerted by the PLC. PLC tags are updated in this case.

Test the project operating elements and displays. If offline testing has not yet been performed, proceed as follows:

1. Check that configured objects are displayed correctly.
2. Check screen hierarchy.
3. Check input fields.
4. Test softkeys.

Test all of the objects in the loaded project for which communication with the PLC is necessary:

- Alarms
- Alarm logging
- Recipes
- Screen selection by PLC through PLC job
- Print functions

### 7.2.5 Uploading project

**Introduction**

During transfer, generally only the run-capable configuration (\*.fmx) is transferred to the HMI device. If the original project file is to be used for further development of the configuration or for fault analysis, it must remain on the configuration computer.

The project and associated source file (\*) can be stored on the HMI device. It can be retrieved (transferred back) if necessary.

After uploading a project, it can be analyzed and modified. This is of particular importance if

- the original configuration computer cannot be accessed, or
- the project source file is no longer available.

## Requirements

The following conditions must be fulfilled in order to retrieve a project:

- The HMI device is connected to a configuration computer.
- The associated source file is stored on the HMI device.
- The "Enable Upload" option must be selected in order for the project file to be transferred from the configuration computer to the HMI device.

This option can be activated in WinCC flexible in "Project ▶ Transfer ▶ Transfer Settings".

- A memory card is inserted in the HMI device.

## Downloading and uploading

In the case of transfer, including transfer of the source file, the project file is transferred to the HMI device.

Following uploading onto the configuration computer, the \*.pdz file is compressed by the WinCC flexible configuration software. The project is then available in HMI format on the configuration computer and can be edited.

---

### Notice

#### Version number

The uploaded project file can only be opened with a configuration software whose version number is greater than or equal to that of the configuration software used to create the project.

#### Test source file

WinCC cannot determine if the source file on the HMI device was generated from the project run on it. If a transfer is performed at any time without the "Upload" option activated, only the project is transferred. The existing source file may be from a previously transferred project.

---

## Procedure

1. Select the menu command "Project ▶ Transfer ▶ Communication Settings" on the configuration computer in WinCC flexible.  
The "Communication Settings" dialog box is opened.
2. Select the required HMI device type and connection type between the HMI device and the configuration computer.
3. Define the connection parameters.
4. Select "OK".
5. Switch the HMI device to transfer mode in the loader.
6. On the configuration computer, use WinCC to start the back transfer using the "Project ▶ Transfer ▶ Back Transfer" menu command.

The project is opened on the configuration computer.

## Result

The uploaded project is opened on the configuration computer. Save the project, if necessary.

## 7.3 System settings

### 7.3.1 Set language

#### Language-dependent objects

When the project is transferred from the configuration computer, up to five languages can be transferred to the HMI device simultaneously. The Asian language variants are also supported. You can switch between the individual languages online at any time and display language-dependent objects within Runtime, e.g., texts or formats, in another language.

The following are language-dependent:

- Alarms
- Screens
- Text lists
- Help texts
- Date/time
- Decimal symbol
- Static texts

#### Requirements

If during operation you want to change the language in which the project will appear on the HMI device, the following conditions must be met:

- The language must be available for the configuration on the HMI device.  
The languages available on the HMI device are defined during configuration.
- An operating element for switching languages must have been configured.

#### Select languages

Immediately after the operating element for switching languages is activated, all of the language-dependent objects are displayed in the new language.

Two different types of language change can be configured:

1. Each time the operating element for switching languages is activated, the HMI device advances cyclically by one language.
2. Activating the operating element for switching languages causes the HMI device to switch to a specific language.

## 7.3.2 Set operating mode

### Conditions for changing operating modes

In order to switch between the operating modes described below on the HMI device, the relevant function must be configured and linked to an operating element.

### Operating modes

The HMI device is designed for the following operating modes:

- Offline mode
- Online mode
- Transfer mode

An operating element in the project can be used to set "Offline" and "Online" operating modes on both the configuration computer and the HMI device.

Transfer mode must have been configured as an operating element.

### Offline mode

In this mode, there is no communication connection between the HMI device and PLC. The HMI device can be operated but data cannot be transmitted to the PLC or received from the PLC.

### Online mode

In this mode, a communication connection between the HMI device and PLC exists. When using this mode, processes in progress can be operated and visualized without restriction.

### Transfer mode

In this mode, you can transfer a project from the configuration computer to the HMI device.

## 7.4 Other transfer functions

### 7.4.1 Functions

#### ProSave Service Tool

The ProSave Service Tool is supplied with WinCC flexible. ProSave provides all the functions that are necessary to transfer data between the configuration computer and HMI device. These include:

- Saving data (backup)
- Retrieving data (restore)
- Updating the operating system (OS update)
- Transferring authorizations
- Transferring options

ProSave can be installed together with WinCC flexible or as a stand-alone tool on the configuration computer. Further information on ProSave is available in the "WinCC flexible" user's guide.

#### ProSave functions in WinCC flexible

ProSave is normally installed on the configuration computer together with WinCC flexible.

The entire function range of ProSave is available within WinCC flexible in the "Project ▶ Transfer" menu. In this way, all the necessary specifications, e.g. target device and download settings, are assumed from the project.

#### Stand-alone ProSave

ProSave can also be installed as a stand-alone application. In this case, the settings relating to the HMI device and the transfer must be defined in the ProSave user interface and match the HMI device settings.

The advantage of stand-alone ProSave is that data backup and restore operations can be performed without WinCC flexible via the following transfer channels:

- Serial
- MPI/PROFIBUS DP
- USB
- Ethernet

## 7.4.2 Backup and Restore

### Introduction

WinCC flexible or the ProSave Service Tool can be used to back up and restore projects, recipes, and passwords.

If the service tool was installed together with WinCC flexible, it can be called by selecting "SIMATIC ► ProSave" in the "Start" menu on the configuration computer.

ProSave is an executable program which can run without WinCC flexible. ProSave can, thus, be run without a WinCC flexible license.

### Requirements

- The HMI device is connected to a configuration computer.
- WinCC flexible or ProSave is installed on the configuration computer.

---

#### Notice

Close all open applications on the configuration computer before starting Backup or Restore.

---

### Backup

During the backup process, the project is transferred from the HMI device Flash memory to the configuration computer.

There are two ways to make a backup copy:

- Backup using stand-alone ProSave
- Backup using WinCC flexible

---

#### Notice

Licenses on the HMI device are not included in the backup.

---

The procedure for the backup differs in terms of the operations performed on the configuration computer.

### Procedure - backup using stand-alone ProSave

1. Start ProSave on the configuration computer using the Windows Start menu.
2. Use the "General" tab to select the required HMI device and connection type with the appropriate connection parameters.
3. Use the "Backup" tab to select the data to be saved:
  - "Recipes" or
  - "Passwords"
  - "Complete backup"

4. Select the folder where the \*.psb backup file should be saved.
5. Configure the required transfer channel on the HMI device.
6. Switch the HMI device to transfer mode.
7. Start the backup operation in ProSave using the "Start Backup" button.  
A status display monitors the progress of the data transfer.

### Procedure - backup using WinCC flexible

1. In WinCC flexible, select "Project ▶ Transfer ▶ Transfer Settings" in the "Select HMI devices for transfer" dialog to select the connection type with the appropriate connection parameters.
2. Open the "Backup Settings" dialog in WinCC flexible using the "Project ▶ Transfer ▶ Backup" menu command.
3. Select the data to be saved:
  - "Recipes" or
  - "Passwords" or
  - "Complete Backup"
4. Select the folder where the \*.psb backup file should be saved.
5. Configure the required transfer channel on the HMI device.
6. Switch the HMI device to transfer mode.
7. Start the backup operation in WinCC flexible using the "OK" button.  
A status display monitors the progress of the data transfer.

### Result

When the transfer is successfully completed, a message appears. The project is copied on the configuration computer.

### Restore

In the case of a restore process, the data backup stored on the configuration computer is reloaded into the internal Flash memory of the HMI device.

There are two ways to restore the data:

- Restore using stand-alone ProSave
- Restore using WinCC flexible

---

#### Notice

##### Data loss

The files in the user memory of the HMI device are deleted during this process. This also applies to the licenses on the HMI device. Therefore, save the licenses elsewhere before starting the restore process.

---

The restore procedure differs in terms of the operations performed on the configuration computer.

### **Procedure - restore using stand-alone ProSave**

1. Start ProSave on the configuration computer using the Windows Start menu.
2. Use the "General" tab to select the required HMI device and connection type with the appropriate connection parameters.
3. In the "Restore" tab, select the path of the file to be restored.  
"Content" indicates the HMI device for which the backup was created and the type of backup data contained in the file.
4. Configure the required transfer channel on the HMI device.
5. Switch the HMI device to transfer mode.
6. Start the restore operation in ProSave using the "Start Restore" button.  
A status display monitors the progress of the restore process.

### **Procedure - restore using WinCC flexible**

1. In WinCC flexible, select "Project ► Transfer ► Transfer Settings" in the "Select HMI devices for transfer" dialog to select the connection type with the appropriate connection parameters.
2. Open the "Restore Settings" dialog in WinCC flexible using the "Project ► Transfer ► Restore" menu command.
3. In the "Open" field, select the path of the file to be restored.  
"Content" indicates the HMI device for which the backup was created and the type of backup data contained in the file.
4. Configure the required transfer channel on the HMI device.
5. Switch the HMI device to transfer mode.
6. Start the restore process in WinCC flexible using the "OK" button.  
A status display monitors the progress of the restore process.

### **Result**

When the transfer is successfully completed, a message appears. The project is available on the HMI device again.

### 7.4.3 Update operating system

#### Introduction

Conflicts may occur when using the HMI device due to the use of different versions of the configuration software and the HMI device image present on the HMI device. In such a case, transfer of the project is stopped by the configuration computer and a message indicating a compatibility conflict appears. The operating system on the HMI device must then be updated. For this purpose, a current HMI device image must be transferred to the HMI device. The image contains the required operating system.

The procedure is described below.

#### Requirements

- The HMI device is connected to the configuration computer according to the selected connection type.
- WinCC flexible or ProSave is installed on the configuration computer.

---

#### Notice

##### Data loss

When the operating system is updated, all of the existing data on the HMI device, such as project, applications, passwords, and recipes, are deleted.

---

There are two different procedures for updating the operating system:

- Updating the operating system using stand-alone ProSave
- Updating the operating system using WinCC flexible

If an operating system update should be performed using WinCC flexible, all the general settings, such as HMI device and transfer settings, are assumed from the project.

#### Update operating system

There are two types of operating system updates:

- An update on an HMI device on which an operating system already exists  
In this case, the operating system update is executed without selecting the "Boot" check box.
- An update on an HMI device on which there is no operating system  
In this case, the operating system update is executed with the "Boot" check box selected.

### Procedure – update operating system without Booting

When updating the operating system without "Booting", the configuration computer communicates with the HMI device via its operating system.

Proceed as follows in order to adapt the operating system on the HMI device to the configuration software version used:

1. Start WinCC flexible from the Windows Start menu on the configuration computer and open a project, or start ProSave from the Windows Start menu.
2. When using WinCC flexible, select the "Project ► Transfer ► Transfer Settings" menu command or, using ProSave, select the existing HMI device on the "General" tab.
3. Select the connection.
4. Enter the connection parameters
5. In WinCC flexible, select the "Project ► Transfer ► Update Operating System" menu command, or in ProSave, select the "OS Update" tab in ProSave.
6. Clear the "Boot" check box if it is selected.
7. In "Image path," select the directory containing the image file (file extension \*.img) belonging to the HMI device.
8. Select the "Open" button.

When the image file has been opened successfully, various version information appears in a window.

9. Configure the required transfer channel on the HMI device.
10. Switch the HMI device to transfer mode.
11. Start the operating system update on the configuration computer using the "Update OS" button.

The time this process takes differs depending on the data channel selected. A status display will monitor the transfer's progress.

### Result

When the operating system update is successfully completed, a message appears.

The HMI device no longer contains a project.

### Procedure – update operating system with Booting

When the operating system is updated with "Booting", the configuration computer communicates with the boot loader of the HMI device.

Connect the HMI device to the configuration computer.

---

#### Notice

An operating system update with booting is only possible via a serial connection.

---

After starting the operating system update, the HMI device must be rebooted so that the HMI device establishes contact via the serial interface.

Proceed as follows in order to adapt the operating system on the HMI device to the configuration software version used:

1. Switch off the power supply to the HMI device.
2. On the configuration computer, select the "Project ▶ Transfer ▶ Transfer Settings" menu command in WinCC flexible, or select the existing HMI device on the "General" tab in ProSave.
3. Select the connection.
4. Enter the connection parameters
5. In WinCC flexible, select the "Project ▶ Transfer ▶ Update Operating System" menu command, or in ProSave, select the "OS Update" tab in ProSave.
6. Select the "Boot" check box if it is cleared.
7. In the image path, select the directory containing the image file (file extension \*.img) belonging to the HMI device.
8. Select the "Open" button.

When the image file has been opened successfully, various version information appears in a window.

9. Start the operating system update using the "Update OS" button.
10. Switch on the power supply to the HMI device again.

This starts the update. The time this process takes differs depending on the data channel selected. A status display will monitor the transfer's progress.

## Result

When the operating system update is successfully completed, a message appears.

The HMI device no longer contains a project.

## 7.4.4 Transferring authorizations

### Introduction

To protect the software, licenses (authorizations) on an Authorization disk can be transferred to and transferred back from the HMI device.

The authorization disk is supplied with the respective option, with ProAgent/MP for example, with ProAgent/MP for example.

### Requirements

- The HMI device is connected to the configuration computer according to the selected connection type.
- WinCC flexible or ProSave is installed on the configuration computer.
- Insert the Authorization disk containing the licenses to be transferred in the disk drive of the configuration computer.

The ProSave Service Tool can be used to transfer authorizations. An advantage of this is that the authorization can be transferred without calling in WinCC flexible.

There are two methods of transferring an authorization:

- Transferring an authorization using stand-alone ProSave
- Transferring an authorization using WinCC flexible

If an authorization transfer should be performed using WinCC flexible, all the general settings, such as HMI device and transfer settings, are assumed from the project.

### Procedure - transferring an authorization to the HMI device

Transferring an authorization to the HMI device

1. Start WinCC flexible from the Windows Start menu on the configuration computer and open a project, or start ProSave from the Windows Start menu.
2. When using WinCC flexible, select the "Project ► Transfer ► Transfer Settings" menu command or, using ProSave, select the existing HMI device on the "General" tab.
3. Select the connection.
4. Enter the connection parameters
5. Select the menu command "Project ► Transfer ► Authorizations" in WinCC flexible or select the "Authorize" tab in ProSave.
6. Select the authorization to be transferred to the HMI device from the "Choices" options.
7. Configure the required transfer channel on the HMI device.
8. Switch the HMI device to transfer mode.
9. Press the ">>" button to start transferring the authorization onto the configuration computer.

### Result

The authorization is transferred to the HMI device. The option as to which authorization is required can now be defined on the HMI device.

### Procedure - transferring authorization back from the HMI device

Transferring an option back from the HMI device:

1. Start WinCC flexible from the Windows Start menu on the configuration computer and open a project, or start ProSave from the Windows Start menu.
2. When using WinCC flexible, select the "Project ► Transfer ► Transfer Settings" menu command or, using ProSave, select the existing HMI device on the "General" tab.
3. Select the connection.
4. Enter the connection parameters
5. Select the menu command "Project ► Transfer ► Authorizations" in WinCC flexible or select the "Authorize" tab in ProSave.
6. Configure the required transfer channel on the HMI device.
7. Switch the HMI device to transfer mode.

8. Press the "Device Status" button on the configuration computer to display all the authorizations currently installed on the HMI device.
9. Select the authorizations under "Installed Authorizations" to be transferred from the HMI device.
10. Press the "<<" button to start transferring the authorizations back.

## Result

The authorization is transferred back from the HMI device. The option as to which authorization is required can no longer be used on the HMI device.

## 7.4.5 Transferring options

### Introduction

Options specially developed for the HMI device, e.g. additional applications, can be installed on the HMI device.

ProSave is supplied with the following options by default:

- Drivers for uninterruptible power supply
- Pocket Internet Explorer

### Requirements

- The HMI device is connected to the configuration computer according to the selected connection type.
- WinCC flexible or ProSave is installed on the configuration computer.

The ProSave Service Tool can be used to transfer authorizations. An advantage of this is that the option can be transferred without calling in WinCC flexible.

There are two methods of transferring an option:

- Transferring an option using stand-alone ProSave
- Transferring an option using WinCC flexible

If an option transfer should be performed using WinCC flexible, all the general settings, such as HMI device and transfer settings, are assumed from the project.

### Procedure - transferring an option to the HMI device

Transferring an option to the HMI device

1. Start WinCC flexible via the Windows Start menu and open a project, or start ProSave via the Windows Start menu.
2. When using WinCC flexible, select the "Project ► Transfer ► Transfer Settings" menu command or, using ProSave, select the existing HMI device on the "General" tab.
3. Select the connection.
4. Enter the connection parameters

5. Select the menu command "Project ► Transfer ► Options" in WinCC flexible or select the "Options" tab in ProSave.
6. Select the options to be transferred to the HMI device from "Available options".
7. Configure the required transfer channel on the HMI device.
8. Switch the HMI device to transfer mode.
9. Press the ">>" button to start transferring the option.

## **Result**

The option is transferred to the HMI device.

## **Procedure - transferring authorization back from the HMI device**

Transferring an option back from the HMI device:

1. Start WinCC flexible from the Windows Start menu on the configuration computer and open a project, or start ProSave from the Windows Start menu.
2. When using WinCC flexible, select the "Project ► Transfer ► Transfer Settings" menu command or, using ProSave, select the existing HMI device on the "General" tab.
3. Select the connection.
4. Enter the connection parameters
5. Select the menu command "Project ► Transfer ► Options" in WinCC flexible or select the "Options" tab in ProSave.
6. Configure the required transfer channel on the HMI device.
7. Switch the HMI device to transfer mode.
8. Press the "Device Status" button on the configuration computer to display all the options currently installed on the HMI device.
9. Select the options under "Installed Options" to be transferred back from the HMI device
10. Press the "<<" button to start transferring the options back.

## **Result**

The option is transferred back from the HMI device.



# Runtime functionalities of a project

## 8.1 Screen objects

### Overview

Runtime offers the following objects for operator control and display:

- Button
- Switch
- I/O field
- Graphic I/O field
- Symbolic I/O field
- Alarm indicator
- Alarm view
- Alarm window
- Recipe view
- Bar
- Trend view
- Slider control
- Gauge
- Date / time field
- Clock
- User view
- Status force
- Sm@rtClient view
- Symbol library

## 8.2 Alarms

### Alarm classes

Alarms indicate events and states in the control process on the HMI. WinCC flexible distinguishes the following alarm classes:

- Operation  
Warning alarms indicate a process status, e.g. motor is ON. Warning messages are configured.
- Error  
Error alarms indicate operational errors such as excess motor temperature. Alarm messages are configured. These are high-priority messages and must therefore be acknowledged.
- System  
System alarms are triggered by the HMI device. They are not configured. System alarms provide information on operator errors or communication faults, for example.
- STEP 7 alarm classes  
The alarm classes configured in STEP 7 are also available for the HMI device.
- Custom alarm classes  
It is possible to configure further alarm classes.

### Alarm buffer

All incoming, outgoing and acknowledged alarm events are logged to an internal volatile buffer memory. The size of this alarm buffer depends on the type of HMI device.

### Alarm protocol

When alarm logging is activated, alarm events are printed out directly on the printer.

It is possible to individually configure each alarm to specify whether it is to be reported (sent to the printer).

### Alarm log

Alarm events are stored in an alarm log, provided this log file is configured. The capacity of the log file is limited by the storage medium and system limits.

### Alarm view

Events stored in the alarm buffer and the alarm log can be displayed in the alarm view in Runtime.

The alarm view is used to indicate process alarm events. Whether alarm events need to be acknowledged or not is defined in your configuration data.

## Alarm window

A configured alarm window shows all queued alarms, or alarms of the relevant alarm class which require acknowledgement. The alarm window opens when a new alarm is received.

You can configure the order in which the alarms are displayed. You can choose to indicate the alarms in ascending or descending order of their occurrence. The alarm window can also be set to indicate the exact location of the fault, including the date and time of the alarm event.

## Alarm indicator

An alarm indicator icon is output on-screen if at least one error alarm is queued on the HMI device.

The indicator flashes as long as unacknowledged alarms are pending. The displayed number indicates the number of pending alarms.

# 8.3 Tags

## Definition

Tags represent defined memory areas on the HMI device, to which values are written and/or from which values are read. This action can be initiated on the controller, or by the operator at the HMI device.

# 8.4 Logs

## Overview

Alarm events and process values can be saved to log files.

Examples of alarm events are the incoming, acknowledged and outgoing events occurring with an alarm message.

Process value logging is used for the following purposes, for example:

- Early detection of danger / fault states
- Increase of productivity
- Enhancement of product quality
- Optimization of maintenance cycles
- Documentation of processes
- Quality assurance

## Memory options

Depending on the configuration, the logs are written to a file or stored in a database set up for this purpose.

- Logging to a CSV file

The project engineer must have specified a folder path for storing the CSV file containing your logged data. This references the storage location.

CSV format table columns are separated by separators, the table rows are terminated by a line break character. This allows you to evaluate or edit your log data using an external text editor or spreadsheet program, for example.

- Logging to a database

By storing your log files in a database, you can utilize the full database functionality for further processing and analysis of the logged data.

Databases tested and released for WinCC flexible:

- MS Data Engine 97 and MS Data Engine 2000
- MS Access 97 and MS Access 2000
- MS SQL Server 7.0 and MS SQL Server 2000

Logging methods used in WinCC flexible Runtime:

- Circular log
- Segmented circular log
- Log with level-dependent system alarm
- Log file with data volume-based system alarm

## Alarm logs

Alarms in the project indicate fault states and operating states of a process. They are generally triggered by the controller. Alarms can be output to the HMI in the form of images. WinCC flexible lets you log alarms and document operational states and error states of the plant.

The following data are logged to the file:

- Date and time of alarm
- Alarm number
- Alarm tags (up to 8)
- Alarm status
- Alarm text (optional)
- Fault location (optional)

All alarms are assigned to a specific alarm class. All alarm classes can be logged.

Alarms can be logged either automatically, or by operator intervention.

The contents of log files can be output to the HMI, if a corresponding alarm view has been configured.

## Data logs

In Runtime, the process values are logged, processed and, depending on the project, written either to files or to the log database.

Data logging is controlled by means of cyclic operations and events. Logging cycles are used to ensure continuous acquisition and storage of the data. In addition, data logging can also be triggered by events, e.g. when a value changes.

## 8.5 Reports

### Overview

Logs are used to document process data and completed production cycles. The log content and layout are specified in the project, as is the event triggering the printout of the report.

For example, a log can be configured for output at the end of a shift, in order to record downtimes. A log can also be configured for the purpose of the documentation of product testing or quality inspections (ISO 9000).

### Edition

Reports are printed in Runtime either automatically, e.g. by means of a scheduler, or manually, e.g. by means of a softkey.

### Printing reports

Reports are output to the printer in graphic mode. The use of a serial printer is not recommended because of the accumulated data volume.

For proper output, the printer must support the paper format and page layout of the report.

---

#### Note

The value of a tag in the report is read and output at the moment of printing. A substantial time may elapse between printing out the first and the last page of a report consisting of several pages. This may lead to the same tag on the last page being output with a different value from that on the first page.

---

## 8.6 System functions and scripts

### Application

System functions and scripts are used in Runtime for the following purposes:

- To control the process
- To utilize the properties of the HMI device
- To make system settings on the HMI device online

In WinCC flexible, each system function and each script is linked to an object, such as a button, field or screen, and an event. As soon as the event occurs, the system function is triggered.

### System functions

System functions are predefined functions that are used to implement many tasks in Runtime, such as:

- Calculations, e.g. increase of a tag value by a specific or variable amount
- Logging function, such as starting a process value log
- Settings, such as changing the PLC or setting a bit in the PLC.
- Alarms, for instance after logon of a different user.

### Scripts

Scripts may also be included in the project for specific applications which may require additional functions. For the creation of scripts, WinCC flexible provides an interface to Microsoft Visual Basic Script (VBScript). This allows you to integrate additional functions, such as:

- Conversion of values, e.g. between different physical units (temperatures)
- Automation of production sequences

A script can control a production sequence by transferring production data to a PLC. The status can be checked based on the returned values, and appropriate measures can thus be initiated.

### Events

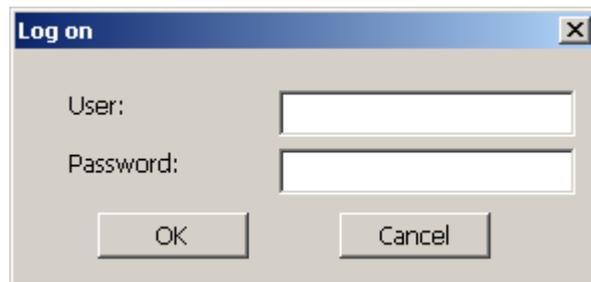
The object and the selected function determine what events can be defined as triggers for executing a system function.

For example, the events "Change value", "BelowLowerLimit" and "AboveUpperLimit" belong to the "Tag" object. The "Loaded" and "Cleared" events are associated with the "Screen" object.

## 8.7 Safety

### Overview

Operation in Runtime is protected by the use of user groups, passwords and log-off times. After you started Runtime, type in the user name and password in the login dialog.



### User groups

The security concept of WinCC flexible is organized in several layers: It is based on authorizations, user groups, and users.

- User groups are created for specific projects by the project engineer. The "Administrators" group is included in all projects by default. User groups are assigned authorizations. The authorization level required for an operation is specifically defined for each individual object and function in the project.
- User accounts are created by the project engineer, or in Runtime by the administrator, or by a user with the same rights, and are always assigned to one group only.

Users belonging to a user group with "Administration" authorization may create further user accounts and assign these to a group.

### Passwords

Only registered users may log in to Runtime by entering their user name and password. The passwords can be assigned by the configuring engineer, by the "Admin" user (or by users who have "Administration" authorization), or by the user himself.

Which functions a user may execute after login depends on which user group he/she is assigned to.

After the project is transferred, only the administrator is authorized to create user accounts, make user group assignments, and change passwords. Any further users assigned to the "Administrator" group by the administrator may also carry out these tasks.

The list will be encrypted and saved on the HMI device to protect it from loss due to a power failure.

---

#### Note

Depending on the transfer settings, changes to the password list are overwritten when the project is transferred again.

---

### Log-off times

A log-off time is specified in the system for each user. If the time between any two user actions, e.g, entering a value or pressing a key, exceeds this logoff time, the user is automatically logged off. The user must then log on again to continue to operate Runtime.

### User view

Use the User view to display the users present on the HMI device.

| User          | Password | Group          | Logoff time |
|---------------|----------|----------------|-------------|
| Administrator | *****    | Administrators | 5           |
| Miller        | *****    | Programmer     | 5           |
| Smith         | *****    | Operators      | 5           |
|               |          |                |             |

### Export and import

All users, passwords, group assignments and logoff times furnished on the HMI device can be exported and reimported on another HMI device, when the configuration is suitable. This helps to you avoid having to enter all of the data again on another HMI device.

---

#### Notice

The currently valid passwords are overwritten during an import. The imported passwords are valid immediately.

---

## 8.8 Other operating functions

### Print functions

Print functions available in online mode :

- Hardcopy  
You can print the content of the currently displayed screen using the "Print screen" system function in your configuration.
- Alarm protocol  
All alarm events (incoming, outgoing, acknowledgment) are also output to a printer.
- Printing reports

---

**Note**

**Special, non-European characters**

When printing alarms in languages other than Western European languages, some characters are not printed correctly under certain circumstances. The print result is dependent on the printer used.

---

---

**Note**

**Printing via a network printer**

Printing alarms on a network printer is not approved for Windows CE HMI devices. All other functions have no restrictions, even over the network.

---

## LED control

The light-emitting diodes (LED) in the function keys of the SIMATIC HMI devices can be controlled from the PLC. A lit or flashing LED may signal, for example, the operator to press a specific function key on the device.



## Operating a project

### 9.1 Basic principles of operation

#### 9.1.1 Basics for operation in Runtime

##### Introduction

The process control features are defined by the project configuration and the options available on the HMI device. This section contains general information on the settings for Runtime and for operation of predefined screen objects.

Screen objects provide general system functions. Screen objects can be used and configured in screens in the project.

Runtime can be controlled with the keys, using the touch screen, or via the keyboard and mouse, depending on the HMI device used.

##### Multiple key operation

Unintentional actions can be triggered by a multiple key operation.

- When you use a key device, you may not press more than two function keys simultaneously.
- If you are using a touch screen device, you may only operate one touch object at a time.

##### Language switching

WinCC flexible allows a multilingual project configuration. Up to five of these project languages can be loaded on the HMI device simultaneously.

Runtime allows you to change the languages, provided this function is configured. Language-specific objects such as texts or formats are localized. The following objects may contain language-relevant texts, for example:

- Alarms
- Screens
- Text lists
- Help texts
- Recipes
- Date/time

- Static texts

### Objects in the template screen

Objects that should be available on each screen are configured in the template by the configuring engineer, e.g., important process values or date and time.

An operating element that is present in the template is available in every screen. In the case of touch screen devices, for example, a button in the template screen simulates a globally effective function key.

### Pictograms

In the case of keyboard devices, pictograms can be configured along the bottom and sides of the screen.

Pictograms highlight the screen-specific functions of the function keys. Activating the associated function key initiates the function symbolized by the pictogram.

## 9.1.2 Operating the touch panel (TP)

### 9.1.2.1 Operating touch objects

#### Operation

Touch objects are touch-sensitive operating objects on the HMI screen, e.g. buttons, I/O fields and alarm windows. The operation of these is basically no different than the operation of conventional keys. You operate these objects by touching them with the finger.



---

#### Caution

Always touch only one object on the screen. Do not touch several touch objects simultaneously. You may trigger an unintended action.

---

---

#### Caution

Do not use any pointed or sharp objects when operating the touch screen in order to avoid damaging the plastic surface.

---

#### Direct keys

With a PROFIBUS DP connection, it is also possible to configure buttons for operation as direct keys in order to allow rapid operator inputs using keys. Rapid button operation is conditional for jog mode, for example.

PROFIBUS-DP direct keys place bits directly from the HMI device in the I/O area of a SIMATIC S7.

---

**Note**

Direct keys can only be triggered by touch and not by a mouse click from an connected external USB mouse.

---

---

**Note**

With touch operation, direct keys are triggered independent of any configured password protection.

---

---

**Notice**

Direct keys are still active when the HMI device is in the "offline" mode.

---

### Button action feedback

The HMI device outputs an acoustic and optical signal as soon as it detects the operation of a touch object. This feedback is always output, irrespective of communication with the PLC. Therefore, this feedback does not indicate whether the relevant action is actually executed or not.

### Acoustic acknowledgement

The HMI device outputs a beep to signal operation of a touch object. You can disable this beep.

### Visual feedback

The type of visual feedback depends on the operated touch object:

- Buttons

The HMI outputs different indications of the "Touched" and "Not touched" states, provided the programmer has configured a 3D effect:



Touched      Untouched

The programmer defines the layout of a selected field (line width and color of the focus.)

- Hidden buttons

The focus of hidden buttons is not set after marking (focus width value is 0, default.) In Runtime, the outline of a touched button is indicated as a line when you modify the focus with value in the configuration data. This outline remains visible until the focus is set on another operating object.

- I/O fields

After you touch an I/O field, a screen keyboard appears as a feedback signal.

### **Operating screen objects with buttons**

Screen objects with predefined buttons can also be operated with external buttons. This requires the programmer to have linked the relevant system functions to these buttons.

In WinCC flexible, these system functions are organized in the "Keyboard actions for screen objects" group.

#### **See also**

Volume & Sounds (Page 6-17)

#### **9.1.2.2 Input of values**

##### **Screen keyboard**

The HMI device automatically opens the screen keyboard when you touch an input object such as an I/O field. This screen keyboard also appears for the input of passwords for access to protected functions. The HMI automatically hides the keyboard again when input is complete.

Based on the configuration of the input object, the HMI device shows a screen keyboard only for the input of numeric or alphanumeric values.

The screen keyboard is activated by selecting an input object in runtime.

#### **See also**

Open Control Panel (Page 6-2)

Operation with external keyboard/mouse (Page 5-9)

### 9.1.2.3 Input of numeric values

#### Numeric screen keyboard

The HMI device automatically opens the numeric screen keyboard for the input of numeric values when you touch an I/O field on the screen. The HMI automatically hides the keyboard again when input is complete.

The <Help> button is only active if an operator note is configured for the I/O field.



Figure 9-1 Screen keyboard for numeric input

#### Procedure

You enter the characters of numeric values using the screen keyboard buttons. Confirm the input value with <Enter>, or cancel it with <Esc>. Both functions will close the screen keyboard.

#### Note

The numeric input fields may be assigned limits. In this case, the system accepts only the values which lie within the configured range. The system rejects any values which are out of these limits and restores the original value. In this case, the HMI outputs a system alarm.

When you input of the first character a Quickinfo appears, showing the high and low limit values of the input field.

#### See also

Input of values (Page 9-4)

### 9.1.2.4 Input of alphanumeric values

#### Alphanumeric screen keyboard

The HMI automatically opens an alphanumeric keyboard for the input of strings and numeric values in hex format when you touch an input object on the screen. The HMI automatically hides the keyboard again when input is complete.

The <Help> is only active if an operator note is programmed for the input object.



Figure 9-2 Screen keyboard for alphanumeric input

### Keyboard layers

The alphanumeric keyboard is organized in several layers:

- Standard layer (see the figure)
- <Shift> layer
- <Alt Gr> layer
- <Shift+Alt Gr> layer

The <Alt Gr> and <Shift+Alt Gr> layers are used for the input of special characters.

### Procedure

You use the screen keyboard buttons to input the characters of alphanumeric values. Confirm the input value with <Enter>, or cancel it with <Esc>. Both functions will close the screen keyboard.

#### 9.1.2.5 Calling the operator note

### Purpose

The operator notes provide additional information and operating instructions with respect to alarms, screen and operable screen objects to the programmer. A operator note may contain information about the permissible range of values for an I/O field, or information on the causes of alarm events and their elimination.



Figure 9-3 Operator note for an I/O field (Example)

### Help on messages

Actuate the  button on the alarm screen or in the alarm view

### Help on input objects

Touch the <Help> button on the screen keyboard. This button is only available if you configured an operator note.

### Help on the current screen

Call the operator note for the current screen

### Help on the focused screen object

Use the <Alt+H> key combination on the screen keyboard or on the connected USB keyboard to display the operator notes configured for the focused screen object.

---

#### Note

To view a new operator note, you first need to close the window showing the current operator note.

---

## 9.1.3 Operating a keyboard device

### 9.1.3.1 Functions of the system keys

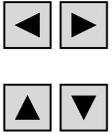
#### Overview of system key functions

---

#### Note

The availability of system keys is is determined by the HMI device used.

---

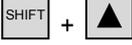
| Key   | Function                     | Purpose   |
|---|------------------------------|---|
|    | Toggling (numbers / letters) | Toggles the assignment from numbers to letters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No LED is lit:<br/>The number assignment is enabled. One actuation of the button toggles to letter assignment.</li> <li>One LED is lit:<br/>The left or right letter assignment is enabled.</li> </ul> Each time the key is pressed, the system toggles between the right letter assignment and number assignment. |
|    | Deleting characters          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Deletes the character at the current cursor position.</li> </ul>   |
|    | Cancel                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Deletes the input characters of a value and restores the original value.</li> <li>Closes the active window.</li> </ul>   |
|    | Acknowledge                  | Acknowledges the currently displayed alarm message, or all messages of an acknowledgement group (group acknowledgement.)<br>The LED is lit as long as unacknowledged alarm messages are queued.   |
|  | Viewing the operator note    | Opens the configured operator note for the selected object (e.g. a message, I/O field.) The LED signals an that an operator note exists for the selected object.  |
|  | Enter                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Applies and closes the input</li> <li>Opens a drop-down list for symbolic I/O fields</li> <li>Triggers buttons</li> </ul>  |
|  | Tabulator                    | Selects the next available screen object in the configured tab sequence.  |
|  | Deleting characters          | Deletes the character to the left of the current cursor position.   |
|  | Moving the cursor            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Selects the next operable screen object on the right or left, above or below of the current screen object.</li> <li>Navigates in the screen object.</li> </ul>   |
|  | Scrolling back               | Scrolls one page down   |
|  | Scrolling up                 | Scrolls one page up.  |
|  | Shift<br>(upper/lower case)  | Use in key combinations, e.g. for switching to uppercase letters.   |

| Key   | Function                  | Purpose   |
|---|---------------------------|---|
|  | Shift (special character) | Use in key combinations for the input of special characters. Some of the keys contain a blue special character on their bottom left corner, e.g. the "%" character. In order to input these characters, press the relevant key in combination with the special character key shown on the left. |
|  | General control functions | Used in key combinations for navigating through trend views, for example.   |
|  | General control functions | Used in key combinations, for example, for the "Status force" screen object.  |

### 9.1.3.2 Functions of the key combinations

#### General operation

#### Navigation

| Shortcut keys  | Function  |
|--|---|
|   | Selects the previous available screen object in the configured tab sequence.                  |
| <br><br><br> | Positions the cursor within a screen object, for example, in an I/O field.                    |
|   | Jumps to the start of the selection list.   |
|   | Jumps to the end of a selection list.   |
|   | Selects a group of entries between the current position and the top of the list, for example. |
|   | Selects a group of entries between the current position and the end of the list, for example. |
|   | Opens a selection list.   |

### Monitor screen settings

| Shortcut keys   | Function  |
|---|---|
|  +  | Increases the brightness of the monitor screen. |
|  +  | Reduces the brightness of the monitor screen.   |

### In the startup phase

| Shortcut keys   | Function  |
|---|---|
|  +  | Toggles the HMI to "transfer" mode.<br>You can always exit transfer mode, provided the unit is currently not transferring any data. |

### Further functions (e.g. in the Explorer)

| Shortcut keys   | Function   |
|---|--|
|  +  | Accepts the selected entry without closing the list.   |
|  +  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Toggles the active window.</li><li>• Toggles between the base area and the window.</li></ul> |
|  +  | Selects all (left letter assignment is active.)  |
|  +  | Shows the properties of a selected element.  |

### Navigating in the operating system

#### General

| Shortcut keys   | Function                         |
|---|----------------------------------|
|  +  | Opens the Windows CE Start menu. |
|  +  | Opens the task manager.          |

## Explorer

| Shortcut keys   | Function                     |
|---|------------------------------|
|  | Changes to the parent level. |
|  | Toggles the display range.   |
|  | Activates the menubar.       |

## Dialogs

| Shortcut keys   | Function   |
|---|--|
|    | Jumps to the next field.   |
|    | Jumps to the previous field.   |
|   | Opens the next tab, if the focus is set on the name of this tab.     |
|  | Opens the previous tab, if the focus is set on the name of this tab. |
|  | Closes the dialog without saving.                                    |

### Operating screen objects with function keys

You may also operate screen objects with buttons, e.g. the alarm view, trend view, recipe view or status force using function keys. The condition is here, that the programmer has linked the corresponding system functions to the function keys.

In WinCC flexible, these functions are organized in the "Keyboard actions for screen objects" group.

#### 9.1.3.3 Calling the operator note

##### Purpose

The operator notes provide additional information and operating instructions with respect to alarms, screen and operable screen objects to the programmer. An operator note may contain information about the permissible range of values for an I/O field (refer to figure below) or, in the case of an alarm, information on the causes of an alarm event and its elimination.

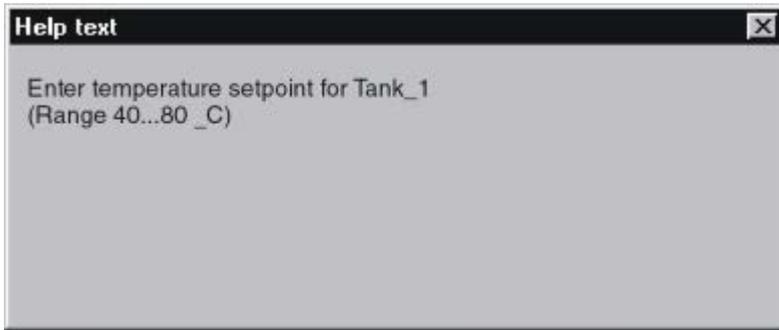


Figure 9-4 Operator note for an I/O field (Example)

### Procedure

To call the operator note configured for an I/O field, for example:

1. Select the I/O field, e.g. .

The I/O field is selected. The LED signal of the  key indicates that an operator note is available.

2. Press  to call the operator note.

The operator note is shown in the language currently set on the HMI. Any operator note configured for the current screen is shown when you press the key again.

3. Close the Help window with the  key or by pressing the  key again.

---

### Note

To view a new operator note, you first need to close the window showing the current operator note.

---

### See also

Set language (Page 7-12)

## 9.2 Controlling graphic objects

### 9.2.1 Button

#### 9.2.1.1 Description

##### Purpose

A button is a virtual key on the screen of the HMI device that can have one or more functions.



You can initiate separate, independent functions with the following button operations:

- Click
- Press
- Release
- Activate the button in the tab sequence
- Deactivate the button in the tab sequence
- Change

##### Layout

A button can be labeled, use a graphic symbol or be hidden.

The operation may be followed with a visual feedback. However, note that the optical feedback only indicates a completed operation and not whether the configured functions were actually executed.

#### 9.2.1.2 Touch control

##### Procedure

Touch the button on the touch screen of the HMI device.

#### 9.2.1.3 Keyboard control

##### Procedure

To operate a button with a keyboard:

- Use the cursor to select the button, e.g. 
- Then press  or .

#### 9.2.1.4 Mouse and keyboard control

##### Procedure

##### Mouse

Click on the button with the mouse pointer.

##### Keyboard

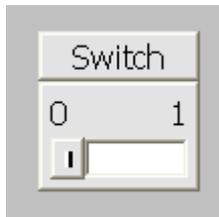
Select the button with <Tab> according to the configured tab sequence, then press <Return> or <Space>.

### 9.2.2 Switch

#### 9.2.2.1 Description

##### Purpose

The switch is an control object and display object with two states: "pressed" and "released." Switches can signal the state of a system component that cannot be seen from the HMI device, e.g. a motor. You can also change the status of that system components at the HMI device.



A switch has two stable states: When you actuate the switch, it changes to the other state. The switch retains this status until the next operation.

##### Layout

A switch can be labeled with a descriptive name, e.g. "Motor 2" and/or the names of its two states, e.g. "ON" and "OFF". The switch can be positioned vertically or horizontally.

### 9.2.2.2 Touch control

#### Procedure

Touch operation of a switch differs depending on the switch type:

- If a slider is displayed for the switch:  
Move the slider on the touch screen of the HMI device to the new position, or double-click the slider area.
- If only a text or a graphic is displayed for the switch:  
Touch the switch on the touch screen of the HMI device.

### 9.2.2.3 Keyboard control

#### Procedure

To operate a switch with a keyboard:

- Select the switch with a cursor key, e.g. 
- Then press  or .

### 9.2.2.4 Mouse and keyboard control

#### Procedure

##### Mouse

The operation depends on the type of switch:

- "Switch with text", "Switch with graphic": Click the switch
- Switch with slider: Click on the slider and move the slider to the other position.

##### Keyboard

Select the switch with <Tab> according to the configured tab sequence, then press <Return> or <Space>

### 9.2.3 I/O field

#### 9.2.3.1 Description

##### Purpose

You enter numeric or alphanumeric values in an I/O field. An example of a numerical value is the number 80 as setpoint for a temperature. An alphanumeric value is the text "Service" as user name.



##### Layout

The layout of an I/O field depends on its configuration in WinCC flexible, e.g.:

- Numeric I/O field  
For input of numbers in decimal, hexadecimal or binary format.
- Alphanumeric I/O field  
For input of character chains
- I/O field for date and time  
For input of calendar dates or time information. The format depends on the language set on the HMI device.
- I/O field for password input  
For concealed input of a password. The input character string is displayed with placeholders (\*).

##### Behavior

If limit values are configured for the tag that is linked to the I/O field, the input value is only applied if the value is within the configured limits.

Any input values which are out of range are rejected. The original value is displayed on the I/O field instead, and a system alarm is output on the HMI device.

#### 9.2.3.2 Touch control

##### Procedure

Press the I/O field on the touch screen of the HMI device. The screen keyboard automatically appears. Enter the desired value using the screen keyboard. Confirm your input with <Enter> or cancel it with <Esc>. After the input has been confirmed or canceled, the screen keyboard is automatically closed.

### 9.2.3.3 Keyboard control

#### Procedure

Enable the I/O field, for example with one or several  according to the configured tab sequence. The selection is signaled by the colored field content.

You now have two options:

- Position the cursor with  and a cursor key. The selection of the field content is cancelled. Type in the relevant value.
- Press . The object changes to the specific editing mode. Now, only one character will be marked in the field.
  - You can use the  /  cursor keys to scroll the character table.
  - The  /  cursor keys can be used to move to the next or previous input position.

Confirm your entry with  or cancel it with .

---

#### Note

To enter the hexadecimal characters "A" to "F" for numerical values, toggle the input keys using  to activate the letter assignment.

---

### 9.2.3.4 Operation with mouse and keyboard

#### Procedure

##### Mouse

Click in the I/O field with the mouse pointer. Type in the relevant value. Confirm your input on the HMI with <Return> or cancel it with <Esc>.

##### Keyboard

Select the I/O field with <Tab> according to the configured tab sequence, for example. The contents of the I/O field change color to show that it is now activated. You now have two options:

- Type in the relevant value.

- Press <Return>. The object changes to the specific editing mode. Now, only one character will be marked in the field.
  - Use the <Up>/<Down> cursor keys to scroll through a character table.
  - Use the <Right>/<Left> cursor keys to move the cursor to the next or previous input position.

Confirm your input on the HMI with <Return> or cancel it with <Esc>.

## 9.2.4 Graphic I/O field

### 9.2.4.1 Description

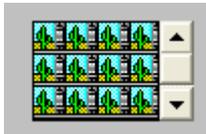
#### Purpose

In a graphic I/O field, select a predefined image from a selection list. The graphic represents the value of a tag. This can be an internal tag or a tag with a connection to a PLC.

The graphic I/O field can also be used merely to output a pure graphic depending on the value of a tag. In this case, you cannot then operate the graphic I/O field.

#### Layout

If the graphic I/O field shows a cactus icon, you have not defined the graphic output of a specific value in your project.



### 9.2.4.2 Touch control

#### Procedure

Touch the graphic I/O field on the touch screen of the HMI device. Selection mode is activated.

Select the desired graphic using the scroll bar.

Apply the required graphic by touching it, or reject the selection by touching another screen object.

### 9.2.4.3 Keyboard control

#### Procedure

Operating a graphic I/O field on a keyboard device:

| Step | Procedure  |  |  |
|------|--|--|--|
| 1    | Select the graphic I/O field<br>e.g.   | The graphic I/O field is marked.   |  |
| 2    | Activate selection mode<br>   | The selection mode is activated.   |  |
| 3    | Select the entry<br> <br>  | Moves the cursor by lines.   |  |
| 4    | Accept the selection<br>or<br>Cancel the selection   | <br> | The selected entry is now valid.<br>The selection mode is closed.<br>The function restores the original value. |

### 9.2.4.4 Mouse and keyboard control

#### Procedure

##### Mouse

Click on the graphic I/O field with the mouse pointer. The predefined images are displayed in the selection list.

If the selection list has a scroll bar: Click on the scroll bar with the mouse pointer. Move the scroll bar in the desired direction while holding down the mouse button.

Select the image and apply the corresponding tag value by clicking the entry. The selection list is closed and the entry is displayed. The graphic I/O field remains active.

##### Keyboard

Select the graphic I/O field with <Tab> according to the configured tab sequence, for example. The contents of the graphic I/O field change color to show that it is now activated.

You can control the graphic I/O field with the following keys:

| Key               | Function   |
|-------------------|--|
| <Return>          | Opens the selection list<br>Confirms input. The selection list is closed. The graphic I/O field continues to have the focus. |
| <Down> or <Right> | Selects the next entry   |

| Key            | Function   |
|----------------|--|
| <Up> or <Left> | Selects the previous entry   |
| <Esc> or <Tab> | Discards the entry and displays the original value in the form of the corresponding graphic. |

## 9.2.5 Symbolic I/O field

### 9.2.5.1 Description

#### Purpose

In a symbolic I/O field select a predefined entry from a selection list. The entry represents the value of a tag. This can be an internal tag or a tag with a connection to a PLC.



The symbolic I/O field can also be used to merely output an entry depending on the value of a tag. In this case, the symbolic I/O field can no longer be operated.

The display options of the symbolic I/O fields depend on the WinCC flexible edition.

#### Layout

If the symbolic I/O field contains a blank text line in the drop-down list, you have not defined a relevant entry in the project.

### 9.2.5.2 Touch control

#### Procedure

Touch the symbolic I/O field on the touch screen of the HMI device. The predefined entries are displayed in the selection list.

If the selection list has a scroll bar: Touch the scroll bar on the touch screen of the HMI device. Touch the touch screen continuously to move the scroll bar in the desired direction.

Select the desired entry and apply the associated tag value by touching the entry on the touch screen. The selection list is closed and the entry is displayed. The symbolic I/O field continues to have the focus.

### 9.2.5.3 Keyboard control

#### Procedure

To operate a symbolic I/O field with a keyboard:

| Step | Procedure  |  |  |
|------|--|--|--|
| 1    | Select the symbolic I/O field<br>e.g.    | The symbolic I/O field is marked.  |  |
| 2    | Opens the selection list<br>  | The drop-down list opens.  |  |
| 3    | Select the entry<br> <br>  | Moves the cursor by lines.   |  |
| 4    | Accept the selection<br>Or<br>Cancel the selection   | <br> | The selected entry is now valid.<br>The drop-down list is closed.<br>The function restores the original value. The drop-down list is closed. |

### 9.2.5.4 Mouse and keyboard control

#### Procedure

##### Mouse

Click on the symbolic I/O field with the mouse pointer. The predefined entries are displayed in the selection list.

If the selection list has a scroll bar: Click on the scroll bar with the mouse pointer. Move the scroll bar in the desired direction while holding down the mouse button.

Select the entry, then apply the corresponding tag value by clicking the entry. The selection list is closed and the entry is displayed. The symbolic I/O field continues to have the focus.

##### Keyboard

Activate the symbolic I/O field by pressing the <Tab> key one or more times, corresponding to the configured tab order. The contents of the symbolic I/O field change color to show that it is now activated.

You can control the symbolic I/O field with the following keys:

| Key     | Function  |
|---------|---|
| <Enter> | Opens the selection list<br>Confirms input. The selection list is closed. The symbolic I/O field continues to have the focus. |

| Key               | Function   |
|-------------------|--|
| <Down> or <Right> | Selects the next entry   |
| <Up> or <Left>    | Selects the previous entry   |
| <Esc> or <Tab>    | Discards the entry and displays the original value in the form of the corresponding graphic. |

## 9.2.6 Alarm indicator

### 9.2.6.1 Description

#### Purpose

The alarm indicator is a configurable graphic icon that is displayed on the screen as long as at least one alarm belonging to the specified alarm classes is pending on the HMI device.



#### Behavior

The alarm indicator flashes as long as unacknowledged alarms are pending. The displayed number indicates the number of pending alarms.

---

#### Note

The icons from the symbol library can only be operated with a mouse or touch screen.

---

### 9.2.6.2 Touch control

#### Procedure

Touch the alarm indicator. An alarm window opens depending on the configuration.

Use the Close icon to close the Alarm window and be able to operate the screens. The alarm window can be opened again by touching the alarm indicator.

### 9.2.6.3 Mouse control

#### Procedure

Click on the alarm indicator with the mouse pointer. An alarm window opens depending on the configuration.

Use the Close icon to close the Alarm window and be able to operate the screens. The alarm window can be opened again by clicking on the alarm indicator.

### 9.2.7 Alarm view

#### 9.2.7.1 Description

#### Purpose

The Alarm view shows alarms or alarm events selected by the planner from the alarm buffer or, if supported by the HMI device, from the alarm log.



#### Layout

To be able to distinguish between different alarms classes, they are identified in the first column of the Alarm view:

| Icon                         | Alarm class          |
|------------------------------|----------------------|
| !                            | Error                |
| (empty)                      | Operation            |
| (depending on configuration) | Custom alarm classes |
| \$                           | System               |

In Runtime you can configure the column order and the sorting order of each column.

### Operator controls

The buttons have the following functions:

| Button  | Function   |
|---|--|
|  | Use this button to call the configured operator note for the selected alarm.           |
|  | This button triggers the function assigned to the "Edit" event for the selected alarm. |
|  | This button is used to acknowledge an unacknowledged alarm.                            |

#### 9.2.7.2 Touch control

##### Procedure

Touch the desired operating element in the Alarm view on the touch screen of the HMI device.

#### Changing column sequence and sorting sequence

In Runtime you can configure the column order and the sorting order of each column.

- Change column sequence

To reverse the "Time" and "Date" columns, for example, touch the "Date" header on the HMI device touchscreen. Continue to press the touchscreen and drag the column heading to the "Time" heading.

- Change sorting order

To change the chronological order of the alarms, touch the column heading, "Time" or "Date" on the HMI device's touchscreen.

#### 9.2.7.3 Keyboard control

##### Procedure

There is also a tab order in the alarm view for the list showing displayed alarms and all configured buttons.

Proceed as follows to acknowledge an alarm using the keys.

1. Activate the alarm view using , according to the tab order.
2. Select the alarm to be acknowledged. The , ,  and  keys can be used for this.

3. Press and hold the  key until the button to be acknowledged is selected.
4. Press the  key.

#### 9.2.7.4 Mouse and keyboard control

##### Procedure

##### Mouse

Click on the desired control object or list entry.

##### Changing column sequence and sorting sequence

In Runtime you can configure the column order and the sorting order of each column.

- Change column sequence  
For example, to reverse the "Time" and "Date" columns, drag the "Date" header to the "Time" header with the mouse.
- Change sorting order  
To change the chronological sorting order of the alarms, click on the header of one of the two "Time" or "Date" columns.

##### Keyboard

There is also a tab sequence also for the list with displayed alarms and all configured buttons within the alarm display.

For example, do the following to acknowledge an alarm using the keyboard.

1. Activate the screen display, for example with <Tab> according to the tab sequence.
2. Select the alarm to be acknowledged. You can use the keys <Home>, <End>, <Page Up>, <Page Down>, <Up> and <Down> for this.
3. Hold the <Tab> key pressed until the button to be acknowledged is selected.
4. Press the <Return> button.

#### 9.2.8 Simple alarm view

##### 9.2.8.1 Description

##### Purpose

On an HMI device with a small display, the simple alarm view is used to display and edit alarms.

## Layout

The display of the simple alarm view depends on the configuration.

- The display shows all current, departed or acknowledged alarms of the selected alarm classes.
- The number of lines per alarm and number of visible lines are specified in the configuration.



## Operator controls

The buttons have the following functions:

| Button  | Function   |
|---|--|
|    | This button is used to acknowledge an unacknowledged alarm.                            |
|    | This button triggers the function assigned to the "Edit" event for the selected alarm. |
|    | Use this button to call the configured operator note for the selected alarm.           |
|    | Use this button to browse upwards alarm by alarm.                                      |
|    | Use this button to browse upwards through the alarm display page by page.              |
|    | Use this button to browse downwards through the alarm display page by page.            |
|  | Use this button to browse downwards alarm by alarm.                                    |

### 9.2.8.2 Touch control

#### Procedure

Touch the desired control object in the alarm view on the touch screen of the HMI device.

### 9.2.8.3 Keyboard control

#### Procedure

The simple alarm view also has a tab order for the list showing displayed alarms and all configured buttons.

Proceed as follows to acknowledge an alarm using the keys.

1. Activate the simple alarm view using , according to the tab order.
2. Select the alarm to be acknowledged. The , ,  and  keys can be used for this.
3. Press and hold the  key until the button to be acknowledged is selected.

4. Press the  key.

#### 9.2.8.4 Mouse and keyboard control

##### Procedure

##### Mouse

Click the relevant button.

##### Keyboard

There is also a tab sequence also for the list with displayed alarms and all configured buttons within the alarm display.

For example, do the following to acknowledge an alarm using the keyboard.

1. Activate the screen display, for example with <Tab> according to the tab sequence.
2. Select the alarm to be acknowledged. You can use the keys <Home>, <End>, <Page Up>, <Page Down>, <Up> and <Down> for this.
3. Hold the <Tab> key pressed until the button to be acknowledged is selected.
4. Press the <Return> button.

#### 9.2.9 Recipe view

##### 9.2.9.1 Description

##### Purpose

The recipe view is a screen object that is used in runtime to display and edit recipe records.

##### Layout

The functions of the recipe view can be configured. To use the Recipe view on small panels, a simple view is also available, for example.

Different settings are also possible for whether the recipes available in the recipe view can only be selected or can also be changed.

##### Behavior

If you change to another screen and have not yet saved changes to the recipe data in the recipe view, you will be prompted to save the recipe data. The recipe name and the name of the recipe record are displayed to show which recipe data have not been saved yet.

When you change to a screen that contains a recipe view loaded with recipe data, the recipe data is automatically updated.

## Operator controls

The following operator controls can be configured in the recipe view:

| Operator control element  | Function  |
|---|---|
|    | Displays the configured operator notes of the given recipe view.  |
|    | Creates a new recipe record in the recipe that is displayed in the specified recipe view. The recipe record values are preset with the values that were specified as "Default value" when the recipe was configured.  |
|    | Saves the recipe data record which is currently displayed in the recipe view. The storage location is determined during configuration in the properties view for the recipe.  |
|   | Saves the recipe record currently being displayed in the recipe view under a new name. The storage location is determined during configuration in the properties view for the recipe.   |
|  | Deletes the recipe record that is displayed in the recipe view from the data medium of the HMI device.  |
|  | Synchronizes the values of the recipe record that is currently displayed in the recipe view with the associated tags.<br>During synchronization, all values of the recipe record are written to the associated tags. Then the values are read from the tags and used to update the values in the recipe view. |
|  | Transfers the recipe record, which is currently displayed in the recipe view, to the connected PLC.   |
|  | Transfers the recipe record, which is currently loaded in the PLC, to the HMI device and displays it in the recipe view.  |

### 9.2.9.2 Touch control

#### Procedure

Touch the desired operating element in the Recipe view on the touchscreen of the HMI device.

Use the screen keyboard to enter values.

### 9.2.9.3 Keyboard control

#### Procedure

Activate the recipe view using , according to the configured Tab order.

The table below shows the shortcut keys used to control the recipe view:

| Shortcut keys   | Function  |
|---|---|
|  +      | Creates a new recipe record in the recipe that is displayed in the specified recipe view. The recipe record values are preset with the values that were specified as "Default value" when the recipe was configured.  |
|  +      | Saves the recipe data record which is currently displayed in the recipe view. The storage location is determined during configuration in the properties view for the recipe.  |
|  +      | Saves the recipe record currently being displayed in the recipe view under a new name. The storage location is determined during configuration in the properties view for the recipe.   |
|  +      | Deletes the recipe record that is displayed in the recipe view from the data medium of the HMI device.  |
|  +  | Synchronizes the values of the recipe record that is currently displayed in the recipe view with the associated tags.<br>During synchronization, all values of the recipe record are written to the associated tags. Then the values are read from the tags and used to update the values in the recipe view. |
|  +  | Transfers the recipe record, which is currently displayed in the recipe view, to the connected PLC.   |
|  +  | Transfers the recipe record, which is currently loaded in the PLC, to the HMI device and displays it in the recipe view.  |

### 9.2.9.4 Mouse and keyboard control

#### Procedure

##### Mouse

Click the desired control object or list entry.

## Keyboard

Activate the recipe view, for example with <Tab> according to the tab sequence.

The table below shows the shortcut keys used to control the recipe view:

| Shortcut keys | Function  |
|---------------|---|
| <Ctrl+Space>  | Creates a new recipe record in the recipe that is displayed in the specified recipe view. The recipe record values are preset with the values that were specified as "Basic value" when the recipe was configured.  |
| <Ctrl+Return> | Saves the recipe data record which is currently displayed in the recipe view. The storage location is determined during configuration in the properties view for the recipe.  |
| <Ctrl+*>      | Saves the recipe record currently being displayed in the recipe view under a new name. The storage location is determined during configuration in the properties view for the recipe.   |
| <Ctrl+Del>    | Deletes the recipe record that is displayed in the recipe view from the data medium of the HMI device.  |
| <Ctrl+=>      | Synchronizes the values of the recipe record that is currently displayed in the recipe view with the associated tags.<br>During synchronization, all values of the recipe record are written to the associated tags. Then the values are read from the tags and used to update the values in the recipe view. |
| <Ctrl+Down>   | Transfers the recipe record, which is currently displayed in the recipe view, to the connected PLC.   |
| <Ctrl+Up>     | Transfers the recipe record, which is currently loaded in the PLC, to the HMI device and displays it in the recipe view.  |

### 9.2.10 Simple recipe view

#### 9.2.10.1 Description

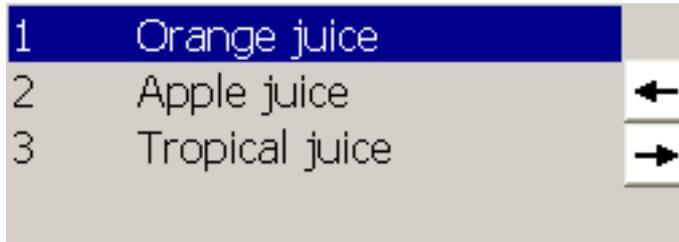
##### Purpose

On an HMI device with a small display, the simple recipe view is used to display and edit recipes.

##### Layout

The simple recipe view consists of three areas:

- Recipe selection
- Recipe data record selection
- Recipe entries



In the simple recipe view, each area is shown separately on the HMI device. The simple recipe view always begins with the recipe selection.

**Behavior**

A command option selection can be called in for each display area by pressing the  button. The command selection lists those commands that are available in the current display area. Each command is assigned a number which you can use to select it directly from the list (without using the <Enter> key).

**Operator controls**

The buttons have the following functions:

| Button  | Function                             |
|---|--------------------------------------|
|  | Returns to the previous selection    |
|  | Calls up the shortcut menu commands. |

**9.2.10.2 Touch control**

**Procedure**

Touch the desired control object or list entry in the simple recipe view on the touch screen of the HMI device.

**9.2.10.3 Keyboard control**

**Procedure**

Each command for processing recipes and recipe records is assigned a number that is shown in the command selection. You can select the command directly by pressing the corresponding number key on the HMI device.

The following table lists the key combinations for controlling the simple recipe view:

| Shortcut keys  | Function   |
|--|--|
|   | Calls the shortcut menu commands.  |
|  +   | Selects the previous/next entry  |
| <br>   | Scrolls one page up or down and selects the corresponding entry                |
|  + <br> +  | Selects the first/last entry   |
|   | Returns to the previous selection  |
|   | Displays the recipe data records or recipe elements according to the selection |

#### 9.2.10.4 Mouse and keyboard control

##### Procedure

##### Mouse

Click the desired control object or list entry.

##### Keyboard

Each command for processing recipes and recipe records is assigned a number that is shown in the command selection. You can select the command directly by pressing the corresponding number key on the HMI device.

The following table lists the key combinations for controlling the simple recipe view:

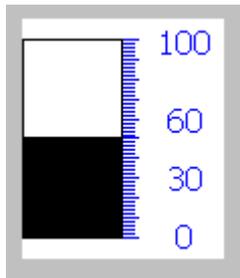
| Key               | Function  |
|-------------------|---|
| <Right>           | Calls the shortcut menu commands.                               |
| <Up>/<Down>:      | Selects the previous/next entry                                 |
| <Pg Up>/<Pg Down> | Scrolls one page up or down and selects the corresponding entry |

| Key          | Function   |
|--------------|--|
| <Home>/<End> | Selects the first/last entry   |
| <Esc>        | Returns to the previous selection  |
| <Enter>      | Displays the recipe data records or recipe elements according to the selection |

### 9.2.11 Bar

#### Purpose

The bar is a dynamic display object. The bar displays a value from the PLC as a rectangular area. The operator at the HMI device can thus see immediately how far the current value is from the configured limit value or whether a setpoint value has been reached. The bar can display values such as fill levels or batch counts.



#### Layout

The layout of the bar is set in the user program. In the bar, for example, lines can identify the configured limit values. Color changes can signal when a limit value has been exceeded or not been met.

#### Operation

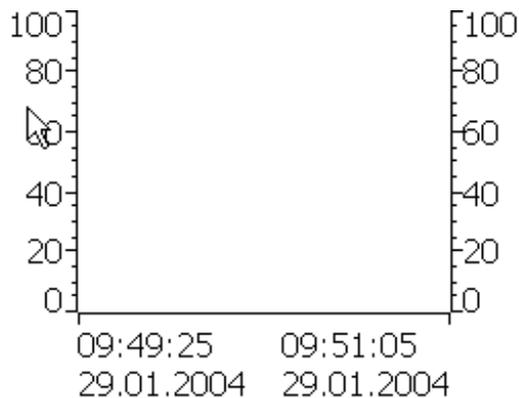
The bar is for display only and cannot be controlled by the operator.

## 9.2.12 Trend view

### 9.2.12.1 Description

#### Purpose

The trend view is a dynamic display object. The Trend view can display actual process data and process data from a log continuously when it is supported by the HMI device.



#### Layout

The layout of the trend view is based on the configuration. A trend view can show multiple curves simultaneously to allow the user, for example, to compare different process sequences. If the displayed process value exceeds or falls below the configured limit values, the violation of the limit can be displayed by a change of color in the curve.

A ruler can also simplify the reading of the process values from the trend view. The ruler displays the Y-value that belongs to an X-value.

#### Operator controls

The trend view is operated by the configured trend display buttons. If no buttons have been configured for the trend view, you can operate the trend view using the keyboard or the function keys of the HMI device. Prerequisite is that the project engineer has configured and documented this type of operation.

| Operator control element  | Function   |
|---|--|
|    | Scrolls back to the beginning of the trend recording. The start values of the trend recording are displayed there. |
|    | Zooms the displayed time section   |
|    | Zooms out of the displayed time section  |
|    | Moves the ruler backward (to the left).  |
|    | Moves the ruler forward (to the right).  |
|    | Scrolls one display width backward (to the left).  |
|    | Scrolls one display width forward (to the right).  |
|  | Shows or hides the ruler. The ruler displays the X-value associated with a Y-value.                                |
|  | Stops or continues trend recording   |

9.2.12.2 Touch control

Procedure

Touch the desired control object in the trend view on the touch screen of the HMI device.

9.2.12.3 Keyboard control

Procedure

Activate the trend view with  using the tab order configured.

The table below shows the available shortcut keys:

| Keys  | Function   |
|---|--|
|  +    | Scrolls back to the beginning of the trend recording. The start values of the trend recording are displayed there. |
|  +    | Zooms the displayed time section.  |
|  +    | Zooms out of the displayed time section.   |
|  +  +  | Moves the ruler backward (to the left).  |
|  +  +  | Moves the ruler forward (to the right).  |
|  +    | Scrolls one display width backward (to the left).  |
|  +    | Scrolls one display width forward (to the right).  |

#### 9.2.12.4 Mouse and keyboard control

##### Procedure

##### Mouse

Click the desired button.

##### Keyboard

Activate the trend view with <Tab>, using the tab order configured.

The table below shows the available shortcut keys:

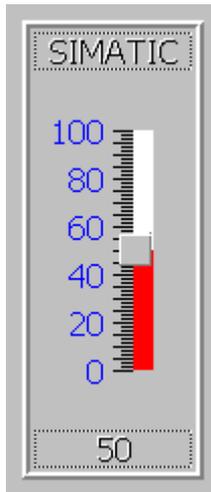
| Key           | Key (Panel PC)   | Function   |
|---------------|------------------|--|
| <Ctrl+Return> | <Ctrl+Return>    | Scrolls back to the beginning of the trend recording. The start values of the trend recording are displayed there. |
| <Ctrl+Plus>   | <Ctrl+Plus>      | Zooms the displayed time section   |
| <Ctrl+Minus>  | <Ctrl+Minus>     | Zooms out of the displayed time section  |
| --            | <Ctrl+Alt+Left>  | Moves the ruler backward (to the left).  |
| --            | <Ctrl+Alt+Right> | Moves the ruler forward (to the right).  |
| <Left>        | <Shift+Left>     | Scrolls one display width backward (to the left).  |
| <Right>       | <Shift+Right>    | Scrolls one display width forward (to the right).  |

## 9.2.13 Slider control

### 9.2.13.1 Description

#### Purpose

The slider is used to transfer a numerical value to the PLC by moving the slide to the desired position. Each change in the position of a slider element results in the immediate change of the corresponding value at the associated tag.



---

#### Note

The displayed value on the slider control may deviate from the actual value in the following circumstances:

- The value range (minimum and maximum value) configured for the slider control does not correspond to the configured limits for the slider control tag.
  - An invalid password has been entered for a password-protected slider control.
- 

#### Layout

If the slider control is used as a display object, the value represented is determined by the position and configuration of the movable slider.

### 9.2.13.2 Touch control

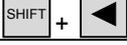
#### Procedure

Touch the slider on the touch screen of the HMI device. Move the slider in the desired direction while keeping contact with the screen.

### 9.2.13.3 Keyboard control

#### Procedure

One way to operate the slider control with a keyboard is to use the cursor keys  
The following table lists the key combinations for controlling the slider control:

| Keys   | Meaning                         |
|--|---------------------------------|
| <br>     | Increase value                  |
| <br>     | Reduce value                    |
| <br>    | Increase value in 5% increments |
| <br> | Move to maximum/minimum value   |

### 9.2.13.4 Mouse and keyboard control

#### Procedure

#### Mouse

Click the slider control. Move the slider control in the desired direction while holding down the mouse button.

#### Keyboard

Activate the trend view with <Tab>, using the tab order configured.

You can operate the slider with the following keys:

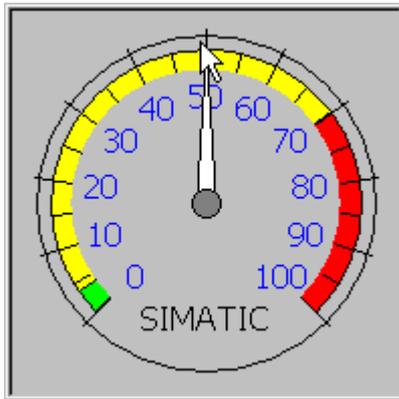
| Key              | Key (Panel PC)               | Function       |
|------------------|------------------------------|----------------|
| <Up> or <Right>  | <Shift+Up> or <Shift+Right>  | Increase value |
| <Down> or <Left> | <Shift+Down> or <Shift+Left> | Reduce value   |

| Key         | Key (Panel PC) | Function                        |
|-------------|----------------|---------------------------------|
| <Page up>   | --             | Increase value in 5% increments |
| <Page down> | --             | Reduce value in 5% increments   |
| <Home>      | --             | Set maximum value               |
| <End>       | --             | Set minimum value               |

### 9.2.14 Gauge

#### Purpose

The gauge is a dynamic display object. The gauge displays numeric values in analog form by means of a pointer. The operator at the HMI device can thus see at a glance, for example, that the boiler pressure is in the normal range.



#### Layout

The layout of the gauge depends on the configuration. Up to three differently colored areas can be set up on the scale to visualize different operating states, such as normal operation, warning range and danger range.

A trailing pointer can display the maximum value reached so far on the scale. The trailing pointer is reset when the screen is reloaded.

The label on the scale can show the measured variable, e.g. boiler pressure, and the physical unit, e.g. bar.

#### Operation

The gauge is for display only and cannot be controlled by the operator.

## 9.2.15 Date / time field

### 9.2.15.1 Description

#### Purpose

The date / time field indicates the system time and data. In Runtime, you may change the system time and data in accordance with the configuration.



#### Layout

The layout in the date/time field depends on the language set in the HMI device.

#### Behavior

An input values other than the date and system time are rejected. Instead, the original values (plus the time that has elapsed in the meantime) will appear in the date/time field and a system alarm will be displayed on the HMI device.

### 9.2.15.2 Touch control

#### Procedure

Touch the date/time field on the touch screen of the HMI device. The screen keyboard automatically appears. Enter the desired value using the screen keyboard. Confirm your input with <Enter> or cancel it with <Esc>. After the input has been confirmed or canceled, the screen keyboard is automatically closed.

### 9.2.15.3 Keyboard control

#### Procedure

Enable the date / time field with one or several , according to the configured tab sequence. The selection is signaled by the colored field content.

You now have two options:

- Use the cursor keys to position the cursor and then enter your value.
- Press . The object changes to the specific editing mode. Now, only one character will be marked in the field.
  - You can use the  /  cursor keys to scroll the character table.

- The  /  cursor keys can be used to move to the next or previous input position.

Confirm your entry with  or cancel it with .

#### 9.2.15.4 Mouse and keyboard control

##### Procedure

##### Mouse

Click in the date/time field. Type in the relevant value. Confirm your input on the HMI with <Return> or cancel it with <Esc>.

##### Keyboard

Select the date / time field using the <Tab> key according to the configured tab sequence, for example. The contents of the I/O field will change color to show that it is now activated. You now have two options:

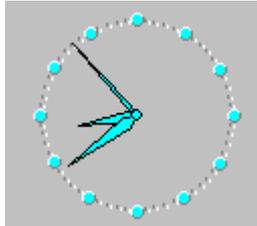
- Type in the relevant value.
- Press <Return>. The object changes to the specific editing mode. Now, only one character will be marked in the field.
  - Use the <Up>/<Down> cursor keys to scroll through a character table.
  - Use the <Right>/<Left> cursor keys to move the cursor to the next or previous input position.

Confirm your input on the HMI with <Return> or cancel it with <Esc>.

## 9.2.16 Clock

### Purpose

The clock displays the system time of the HMI device.



### Layout

The time is displayed in analog or digital form, depending on the configuration. The current date is also displayed in the digital view. The display format depends on the language set on the HMI device.

### Operation

The clock is for display only and cannot be operated. You can use the Date/Time field, for example, to set the date and time.

## 9.2.17 User view

### 9.2.17.1 Description

#### Purpose

The user view is used by the administrator to manage user accounts, group assignments and user passwords.

Users can change their passwords and logoff times.

| User          | Password | Group          | Logoff time |
|---------------|----------|----------------|-------------|
| Administrator | *****    | Administrators | 5           |
| Miller        | *****    | Programmer     | 5           |
| Smith         | *****    | Operators      | 5           |
|               |          |                |             |

#### Layout

The user view contains four columns for the user, password, group and log-off time. The passwords are encrypted by means of asterisks.

- The users in the "Administrators" group can view all existing users in the user view, change all entries and create new user accounts.
- Other users only see a single line in the user view showing their own user name.

If the name or password of a logged on user is entered, a system alarm is output.

#### Export and import

A user view contains all users, passwords, group assignments and logoff times set up on the HMI device. To eliminate the necessity of reentering all data again on another HMI device, you can export the user view, and then import it to another device. However, this is only possible if this function has been configured.

---

#### Note

Do not export the password list immediately after changing it. Exit the "User view" object after making changes and wait until the changes have been written to the internal Flash memory before performing the export.

---

---

#### Notice

The currently valid passwords are overwritten during an import. The imported passwords are valid immediately.

---

### 9.2.17.2 Touch control

#### Procedure

To create a new user, touch an empty line. Then use the screen keyboard to type in the user name and confirm your entry with <Enter>. Assign a password and a logoff time in the same way and then select the group.

To change user data, touch the relevant field and make the change.

### 9.2.17.3 Keyboard control

#### Procedure

Select the user view, for example with  according to the configured tab sequence.

- To create a new user, select an empty line using the cursor keys and then press .

Enter the user name and press . Use  to go to the next field and repeat the procedure.

- To change the user data, select the desired line using the cursor keys and then press .

Make the desired changes and then complete the action by pressing .

### 9.2.17.4 Mouse and keyboard control

#### Procedure

##### Mouse

To create a new user account, click an empty line. Type in the user name, then confirm your entry with <Return>. Assign a password and a logoff time in the same way and then select the group.

To change user data, click the relevant field and make the change.

##### Keyboard

Select the user view, for example, using the <Tab> key according to the configured tab sequence.

To create a new user account, select an empty line using the cursor keys and then press <Return>. Type in the user name, then confirm your entry with <Return>. Use <Right> to go to the next field and repeat the procedure.

To change the user data, select the desired line using the cursor keys and then press <Return>. Then make the relevant changes.

## 9.2.18 Simple user view

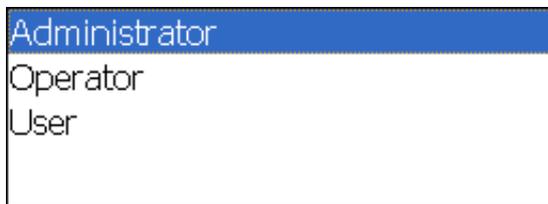
### 9.2.18.1 Description

#### Purpose

On HMI devices with a small display, the simple user view is used to display users on the HMI device.

#### Layout

Users in the "Administrators" group see all existing users in the user view.



Other users only see a single line in the user view showing their own user name.

### 9.2.18.2 Touch control

#### Procedure

Touch the relevant entry in the simple user view on the touch screen of the HMI device.  
Use the screen keyboard to input data.

### 9.2.18.3 Keyboard control

#### Entering custom user data

Custom user data (name, password, group, log-off time) is entered sequentially in several dialogs.

#### Procedure

Select the simple user view with , using the tab order configured. Select one of the users displayed using the cursor keys and press .

The following table shows the available key operations for entering custom user data in the dialogs:

| Key  | Function                               |
|--|--|
| <br> | Selects the previous/next user         |
|   | Selects the next element in the dialog |
|   | Opens the next dialog                  |

#### 9.2.18.4 Mouse and keyboard control

##### Entering custom user data

Custom user data (name, password, group, log-off time) is entered sequentially in several dialogs.

##### Procedure

##### Mouse

Start the input mode by clicking on the desired user name.

##### Keyboard

Start the input mode by activating the simple user view, for example, using the <Tab> sequence and then select the user with <Enter>.

The following table shows the available key operations for entering custom user data in the dialogs:

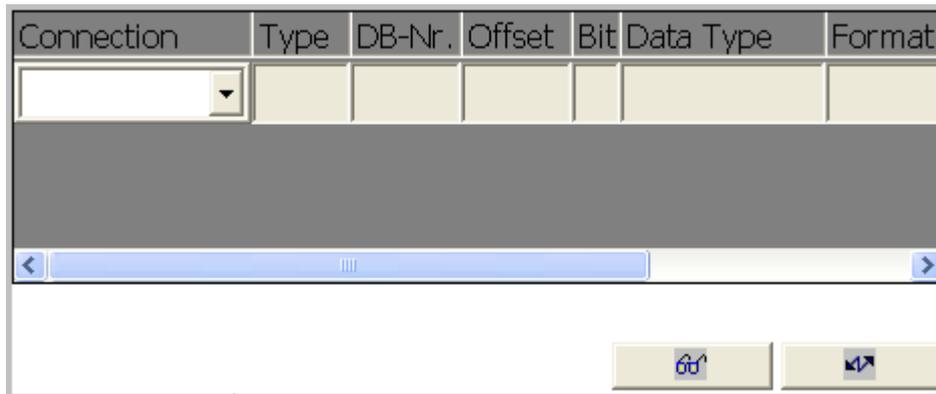
| Key          | Function                               |
|--------------|--|
| <Up>/<Down>: | Selects the previous/next user         |
| <Tab>        | Selects the next element in the dialog |
| <Enter>      | Opens the next dialog                  |

### 9.2.19 Status force

#### 9.2.19.1 Description

##### Purpose

You read or write access values of the connected PLC directly in the status / control view. The status / control view allows you to carry out operations such as monitoring or modifying the addresses of the PLC program, without the need of an online connection via PC or PG.



##### Note

The status force view can only be used in combination with SIMATIC S5 or SIMATIC S7 PLCs.

##### Layout

The screen shows the general layout of the status / control screen object. Every row represents an address.

If your HMI device has a mouse or a touch screen, you can change the column sequence on the HMI device. For example, to interchange the format and control value columns, drag the control value header to the format header.

The table shows the meaning of the individual columns.

| Column                       | Function  |
|------------------------------|---|
| Connection                   | The PLC of which the address ranges are to be displayed       |
| Type, DB number, offset, bit | The address range of the operand                              |
| Data type, format            | The data type of the operand                                  |
| Status value                 | The value that was read from the given address of the operand |
| Control value                | The value to be written to the given address of the operand   |

## Operator controls

The buttons have the following functions:

| Button  | Function   |
|---|--|
|  | This button refreshes the display in the status value column.<br>The button engages when it is pressed. You cannot operate any input fields until the button is actuated again and the refresh is stopped. |
|  | Use this button to accept the new value in the control value column. The control value is then written to the PLC.   |

### 9.2.19.2 Touch control

#### Procedure

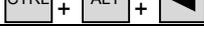
To enter or edit values, touch the respective field. A screen keyboard or a selection list appears.

Touch the relevant buttons to write or read the values.

### 9.2.19.3 Keyboard control

#### Procedure

The following table lists the key combinations for controlling the status force:

| Keys  | Meaning   |
|---|---|
|  | Operates the "Write" button                         |
|  | Operates the "Read" button.                         |
|  | Selects the first/last field in the current row.    |
|  |   |
|  | Selects the first/last field in the current column. |
|  |   |
|  | Increases the width of the current column.          |
|  | Decreases the width of the current column.          |

| Keys  | Meaning  |
|---|--|
|  +  | Deletes the current row<br>Otherwise:<br>Select "Internal tag" in the "Link" column. |
|  +  | Optimize column width.   |
|    | Opens selection field  |

### 9.2.19.4 Mouse and keyboard control

#### Procedure

#### Mouse

To enter or edit values, click the relevant field. Enter the value using the keyboard, or select a value from the selection list.

Click the desired buttons to write or read the values.

#### Keyboard

The following keys can be used on the keyboard to operate Status Force.

| Key           | Key (Panel PC)     | Function                              |
|---------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <Ctrl+Return> | <Ctrl+Enter>       | Operating the "Write" button          |
| <Ctrl+Space>  | <Ctrl+Space>       | Operating the "Read" button           |
| <Ctrl+Left>   | <Ctrl+Shift+Left>  | Selects first field in current row    |
| <Ctrl+Right>  | <Ctrl+Shift+Right> | Selects last field in current row     |
| <Ctrl+Up>     | <Ctrl+Shift+Up>    | Selects first field in current column |
| <Ctrl+Down>   | <Ctrl+Shift+Down>  | Selects last field in current column  |
| <Ctrl+Del>    | <Ctrl+INS/DEL>     | Deletes current row                   |
| <Return>      | <Enter>            | Opens selection list                  |

## 9.2.20 Sm@rtClient view

### 9.2.20.1 Description

#### Purpose

The Sm@rtClient view may be used to start remote monitoring and control of another HMI device.



With an appropriate configuration, the Sm@rtClient view can be used to monitor and control a system process from multiple HMI devices with the same authorizations.

#### Layout

The Sm@rtClient view displays the current Runtime screen of the remote device on your HMI device. You can now monitor and control this screens according to your configuration. Scroll bars are displayed if the screen of the remote HMI device is larger than that of your HMI device.

#### Behavior

#### Start

The call for starting remote monitoring or control can be configured in different ways. Depending on the project, you can view the Runtime of the remote HMI device by taking the following steps:

- Automatically when the device is started (and selection of the screen with the Sm@rtClient view, if this is not the start screen)
- By activating the Sm@rtClient view with the <Tab> key or (on a touch screen device) through a touch
- By entering the IP address of the remote HMI device and, if required, entering a password in the appropriate field in the Sm@rtClient view

---

#### Note

If you enter an incorrect password five time in succession, all attempts to establish a connection are rejected for the next ten seconds.

---

## Stop

The screen showing the display of the remote HMI device can be configured to be closed in different ways. Depending on the configuration, you can terminate the remote monitoring or remote operation and open the next object of your own project by taking one of the following steps:

- Press the appropriate key.
- Click "Exit".
- Exit the screen.
- Press <Shift+Ctrl> or (with touch devices) press a clear spot for an extended period. The menu opens with the corresponding menu item.

## Monitoring mode

On a Sm@rtClient view which is configured for monitoring mode, you can only monitor the remote HMI device. You cannot control its operation.

In this case, the keys retain their standard functions. Press <Tab> to open the next object in the current screen of your project according to the configured tab sequence.

## Control mode

The Sm@rtClient view can be run in two different control modes:

- If the "shared" check box is not set in the "Display" area of the "General" property view, only one HMI device can use the remote control function at any time. The others can be used to monitor the activities. Depending on the setting, a further HMI device logon will either be rejected, or the existing connection will be shut down so that the new HMI device can connect.
- If the "shared" check box is set in the "Display" area in the property view "General", every HMI device on which remote operation is activated can access the remote HMI device and assume control of the process. Only one HMI device can be active at a time in this case. A different HMI device can first assume control when there has been no activity on the active HMI device for a specified period of time.

The appearance of the mouse pointer indicates when operator control is possible.

In both operation modes, the operator at the remote device is not permitted to initiate any further actions.

---

### Note

In the event of emergency, you can override the operation block on the remotely controlled or currently inactive HMI device by clicking on the user interface five times in succession or pressing the <Shift> key five times in succession. Then you may have to enter a specific (configured) password.

---

## Keys

In operation mode, all keys have the same function as those on the remote HMI device. You can therefore use the <Tab> key to move from one object to another on the remote screen, in the order of the tab configuration.

## Function keys

When you press a function key that has been configured with a function, this function will be executed in your project.

If you press a function that has *not* been configured with a function in your project, it will actuate the function key on the remote HMI device.

### 9.2.20.2 Touch control

#### Procedure

Touch the desired operating element on the touch screen of the HMI device.

### 9.2.20.3 Keyboard control

#### Procedure

How do I operate the Sm@rtClient view with touch?

- Activate the desired control object with  according to the configured tab sequence on the remote HMI device.
- Move the scroll bars in the desired direction with  +  or  + .
- To exit the Sm@rtClient view, display a menu line with  + . Use  to make a selection and the corresponding shortcut key for the desired menu command.

### 9.2.20.4 Mouse and keyboard control

#### Procedure

#### Mouse

Click on the desired control object with the mouse pointer.

To operate a scroll bar, click on it with the mouse pointer and move it in the desired direction while holding down the mouse button.

## Keyboard

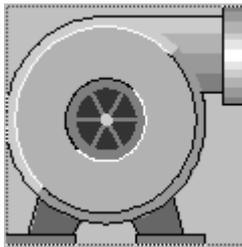
- Activate the desired control object with <Tab> according to the configured tab sequence on the remote HMI device
- You can move the scroll bars in the desired direction with <Ctrl+Up/Down>.
- To exit the Sm@rtClient view, display a menu line with <Shift+Ctrl>. Select the desired menu command with <Alt+Shortcut key>.

## 9.2.21 Symbol library

### 9.2.21.1 Description

#### Purpose

The symbol library is a comprehensive library with images from the areas of technology and production.



#### Behavior

The following events can trigger functions when the project engineer has configured this for the symbols:

- Click
- Double-click
- Press
- Release
- Enable
- Disabling

---

#### Note

The icons from the symbol library can only be operated with a mouse or touch screen.

---

### 9.2.21.2 Touch control

#### Procedure

Touch the symbol on the touch screen of your HMI device.

There is no operator feedback, for example with color changes.

### 9.2.21.3 Mouse control

#### Procedure

Click on the symbol with the mouse pointer. The active mouse function is signaled in Runtime by a changing cursor icon according to your configuration.

There is no operator feedback, for example with color changes.



## Operating recipes

### 10.1 Recipes

#### Overview

Recipes are a collection of associated data, e.g. machine configuration or production data. You can transfer these data, for example, from the HMI device to the controller in a single step in order to change the production variant. If you have programmed directly at the machine, for example, you can transfer the data to your HMI device and write these to the recipe.

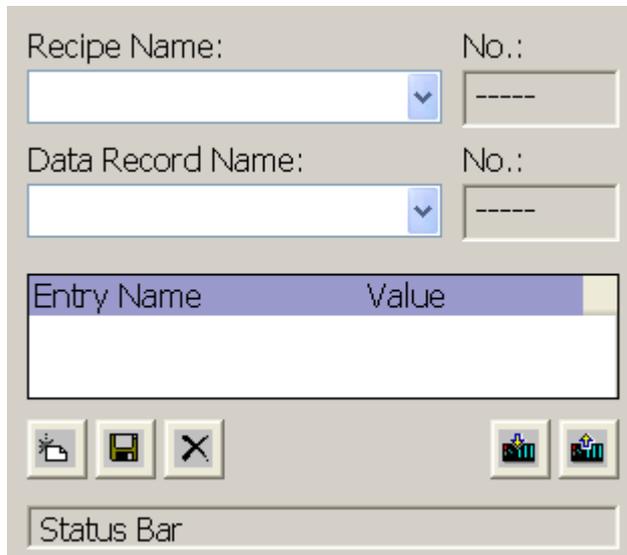
#### Operating recipes in Runtime

WinCC flexible offers two options of viewing and editing recipes and the corresponding recipe data records in Runtime on the HMI device:

- Recipe view
- Recipe screen

### Recipe view

The recipe view is a screen object that is configured in the "Screens" editor. For example, you can specify what operating function the recipe view will have in Runtime:



The recipe view shows recipe data records in tabular form. The Recipe view is particularly useful if data records are small in size or only a few values are to be modified.

### Recipe screen

A recipe screen represents a process screen which you configured as individual input screen form by means of an individual layout of I/O fields and other screen objects in the "Screens" editor. This makes it possible for you to input parameter data in the context of machine visualization. The I/O fields for a recipe can be distributed over multiple recipe screens, with topical organization of recipe elements, for example. The operating functions for the recipe screens must be configured explicitly in the process screens.

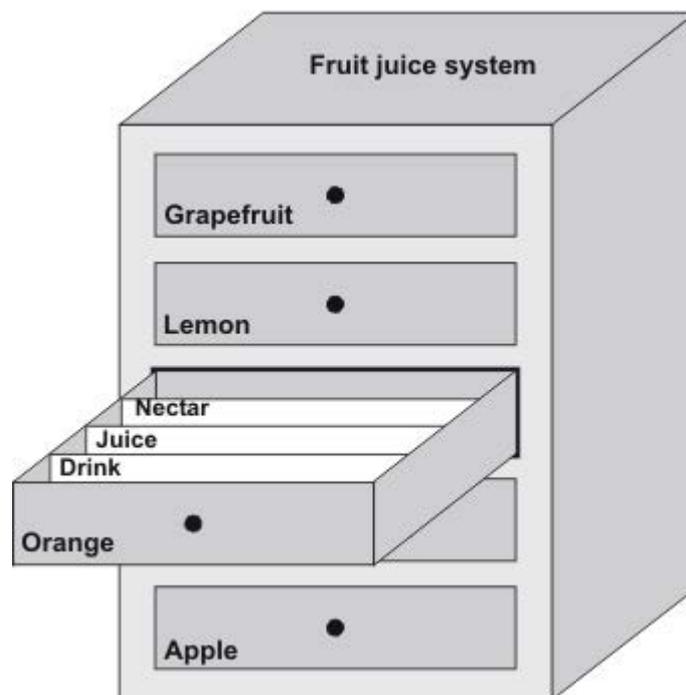
## 10.2 Structure of recipes

### Introduction

A product often has several variants. For example, product variants can differ with respect to size or quality. This condition is accurately reflected in a recipe.

### Principle

A recipe consists of recipe data records containing values. The structure of a recipe is explained using the example of a filing cabinet.



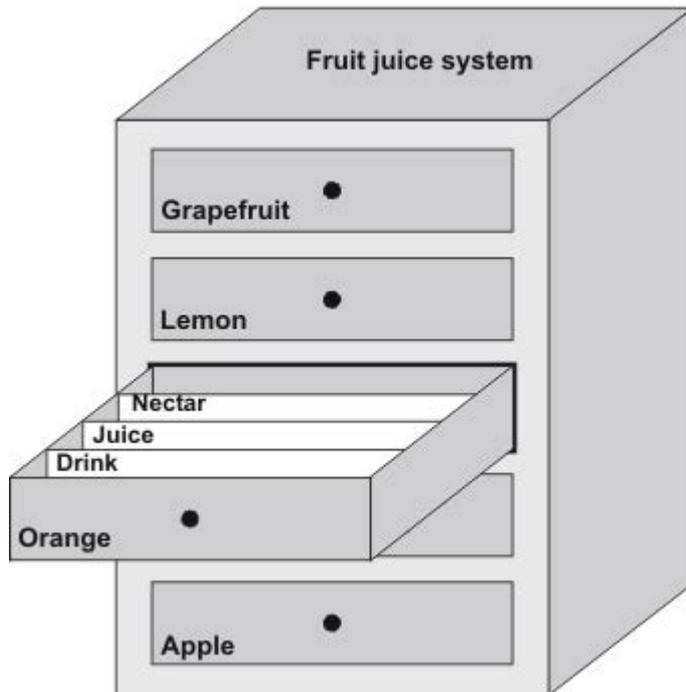
Each recipe represents a drawer of the file cabinet shown, and thus precisely one product. If the fruit juice mixing plant is producing orange, apple, and tropical fruit flavors, you would then configure one recipe for each flavor.

You define the recipe elements in the recipe. A recipe element consists of the display name and a tag. The display names are indicated in the recipe data records and on the HMI device in the recipe view. In Runtime, the appropriate tag value is read from the controller or transferred to the controller.

## 10.3 Structure of recipe data records

### Introduction

A recipe data record corresponds to a file card in an individual drawer and thus to a single product variant. If the fruit juice mixing plant is producing juice, nectar, and fruit drinks, you would then create a recipe data record in the recipe for each product variant. In this case, the product variants consist of the different mixing ratios for the ingredients.



A recipe data record is a set of values for the tags defined in the recipe. You enter the values in the input fields. You can enter the values either during configuration or during runtime on the HMI device or the machine.

| Elements |          | Data records |           |       |             |       |       |
|----------|----------|--------------|-----------|-------|-------------|-------|-------|
|          | Name     | Display name | Numb... ▲ | Water | Concentrate | Sugar | Aroma |
| ☰        | Beverage | Beverage     | 1         | 30    | 70          | 45    | 600   |
| ☰        | Nektar   | Nektar       | 2         | 50    | 50          | 10    | 300   |
| ☰        | Juice    | Juice        | 3         | 5     | 95          | 3     | 100   |

To produce a product, you transfer the appropriate recipe data record from the HMI device to the connected controller. The values in the recipe data record cannot be changed on the HMI device unless the configuring engineer has provided for this.

## Editing recipe data records

You can edit recipe data records during configuration or in runtime on the HMI device.

- During configuration, you can define recipes in the "Recipes" editor in the "Elements" tab. You can enter values in the recipe data records in the "Data records" tab.
- During runtime, you have the option of entering recipe data record values directly on the HMI device or importing them via a CSV file. You can also export the recipe data records to a CSV file.

## 10.4 Recipe application

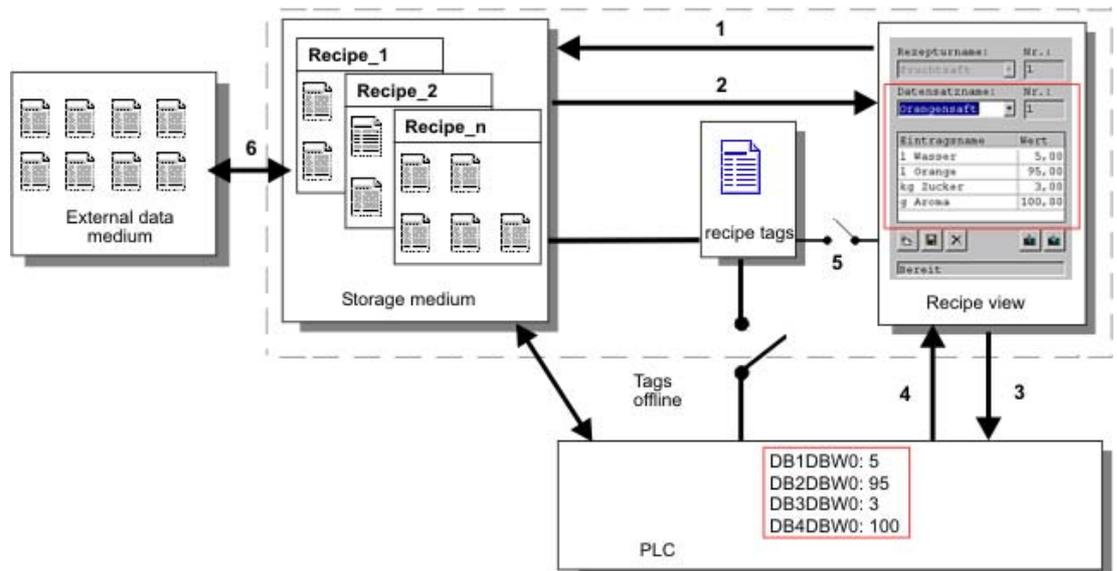
### 10.4.1 Transfer of recipe data records

#### Introduction

Recipe data records can be transferred in Runtime between external data storage media, e.g. a flash memory, an HMI device and a controller.

#### Principle

The figure below shows how recipe data records can be transferred. You configure the appropriate functionality for transferring data records in the recipe view. In a recipe screen, you use the system functions provided for this purpose.



The HMI device stores recipe data records on a storage medium such as a flash memory device or hard disk. You can edit a recipe data record in a recipe view or recipe screen on the HMI device display.

- (1) Save: Values you change on the recipe view or recipe screen are written to the recipe data record on the storage medium by executing the "Save" function.
- (2) Load: The "Load" function is used to update the values of recipe tags shown on the recipe screen with the values of the recipe data record of the storage medium. The function overwrites any values changed on the recipe screen. The "Load" function is executed for the Recipe view when the data record is selected again.
- (3) Write to controller: The values deltas of the recipe view and recipe screen are downloaded to the PLC by calling the "Write to controller" function.
- (4) Read from controller: Call the "Read from controller" function to update the indicated values of the recipe view and recipe screen with the controller values. The function overwrites any data changed on the recipe view or screen.
- (5) Synchronization with controller: In your configuration, you can decide to synchronize the values in the recipe view with the values of the recipe tags by setting the "Synchronization with controller" function. After this synchronization, both the recipe tags and the recipe view contain the current updated values. When the "Variables offline" setting is disabled for the recipe, the current values are also applied in the controller.
- (6) Import, Export: A data record can be exported to an external data carrier in order to process it in MS Excel, for example. The data record is there stored in \*.csv format.

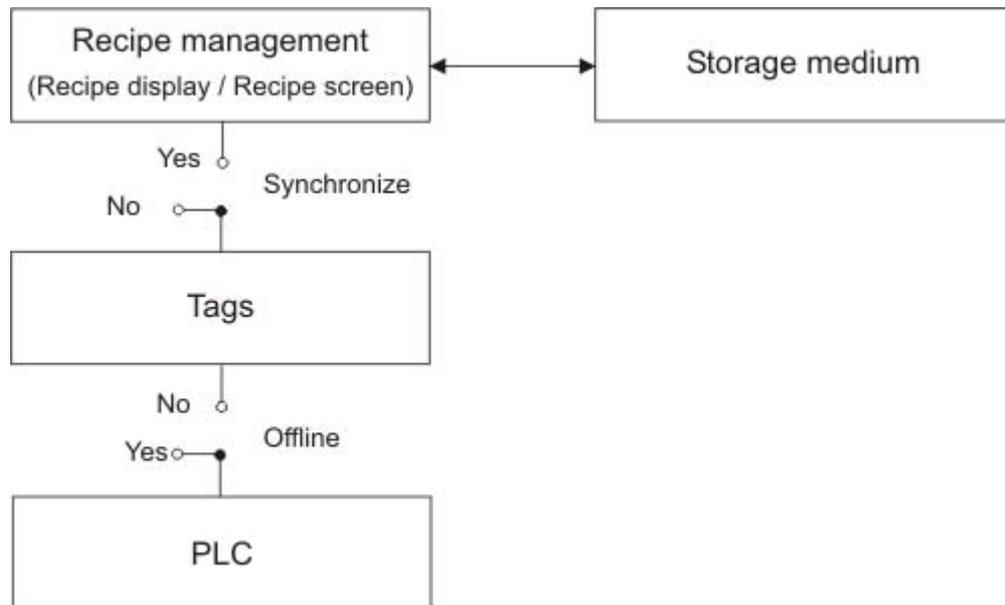
## 10.4.2 Configuration of recipes

### Introduction

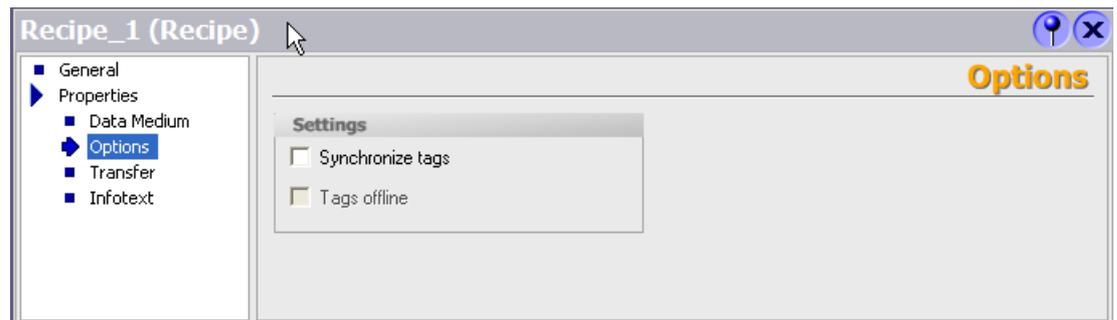
You configure recipes according to your intended application. To write a value to a recipe data record on your HMI device without disturbing the current process, you need configuration settings other than those required for assigning parameters to a machine.

### Principle

In the configuration settings of a recipe, you specify the behavior of the tags you are using in the recipe. The figure below shows the basic differences when working with recipe data records.



These configuration settings are made under "Settings" in the property view:



### Configuration 1: Recipe without "Synchronize tags"

Data of a data record that has been read are only displayed and can only be edited in the recipe view. Using these same tags outside of the recipe view does not affect their values.

### Configuration 2: Recipe with "Synchronize tags" and with "Tags offline"

The "Synchronize tags" option is used to specify that the data of a data record read from the controller or storage medium are to be written to or read from the tags you have configured for the recipe.

The "Offline" option ensures that the input data are written to the tags without being transferred directly to the controller.

### Configuration 3: Recipe with "Synchronize tags" and without "Tags offline"

The "Synchronize tags" option is used to specify that the data of a data record read from the controller or storage medium are to be written to or read from the tags you have configured for the recipe.

The input or read data are transferred immediately to the controller:

### Synchronization with the controller

In the case of synchronous transfer, both the controller and the HMI device set status bits in the shared data compartment. You can use this mechanism to prevent uncontrolled overwriting of data in either direction in your control program. You define the address range of the data compartment separately for each controller on the "Range pointer" tab in the "Connections" editor.

Applications for synchronous transfer of recipe data records:

- The controller is the "active partner" for the transfer of recipe data records.
- The controller evaluates the data containing the recipe number and name, as well as the recipe data record number and name.
- Triggering the transfer of data records by means of system function or PLC job, e.g. with the system functions "SetDataRecordToPLC" and "GetDataRecordFromPLC", or with the PLC jobs "Set\_Data\_Record\_To\_PLC" and "Get\_Data\_Record\_From\_PLC."

In order to synchronize transfer of data records between the HMI device and the controller, the following requirements must be met during configuration:

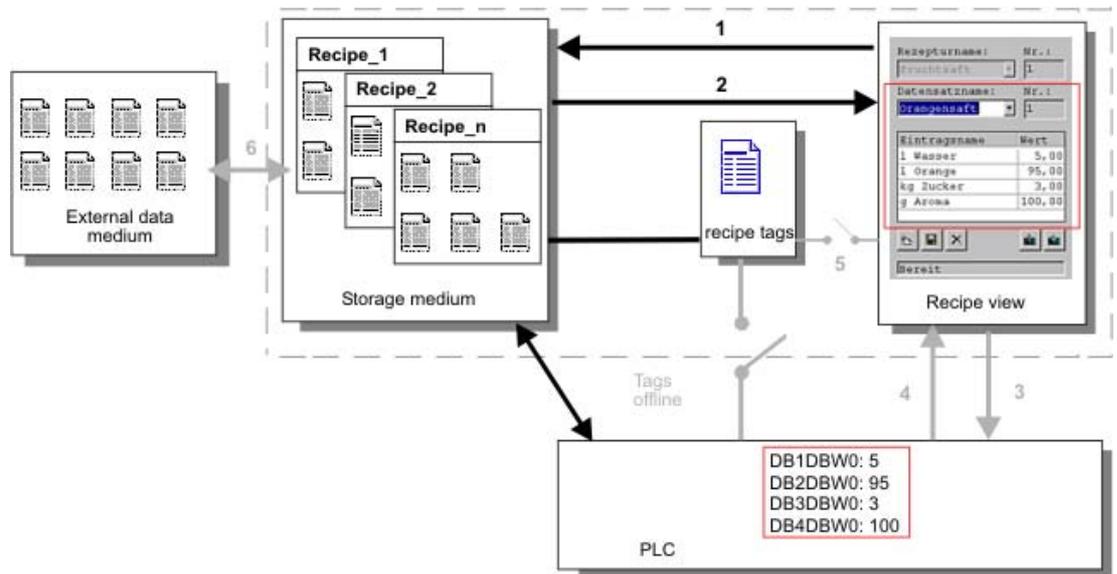
- The "Data mailbox" range pointer is located under "Range pointers" in the project view.
- The controller with which the HMI device synchronizes the data record transfer is specified in the recipe properties.

### 10.4.3 Scenario: Entering recipe data records in Runtime

#### Objective

You want to enter production data on the HMI device without disturbing the process that is currently underway. Therefore, the production data should not be transferred to the PLC.

#### Sequence

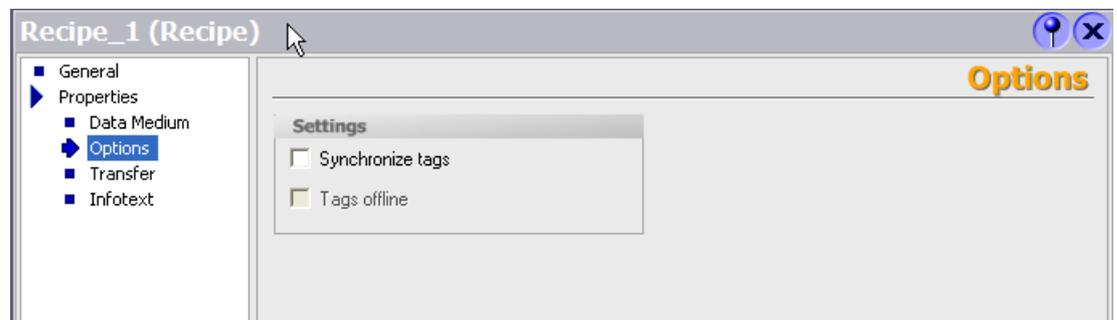


You enter the production data in the recipe view or the recipe screen, assign a recipe data record name, and save the new recipe data record on the storage medium of the HMI device.

#### Configuration in WinCC flexible

You configure the recipe along with the associated tags.

Synchronization with the recipe tags is not necessary, because production data (tags) are not intended to be transferred to the PLC. Make the following settings for the recipe in the property view:



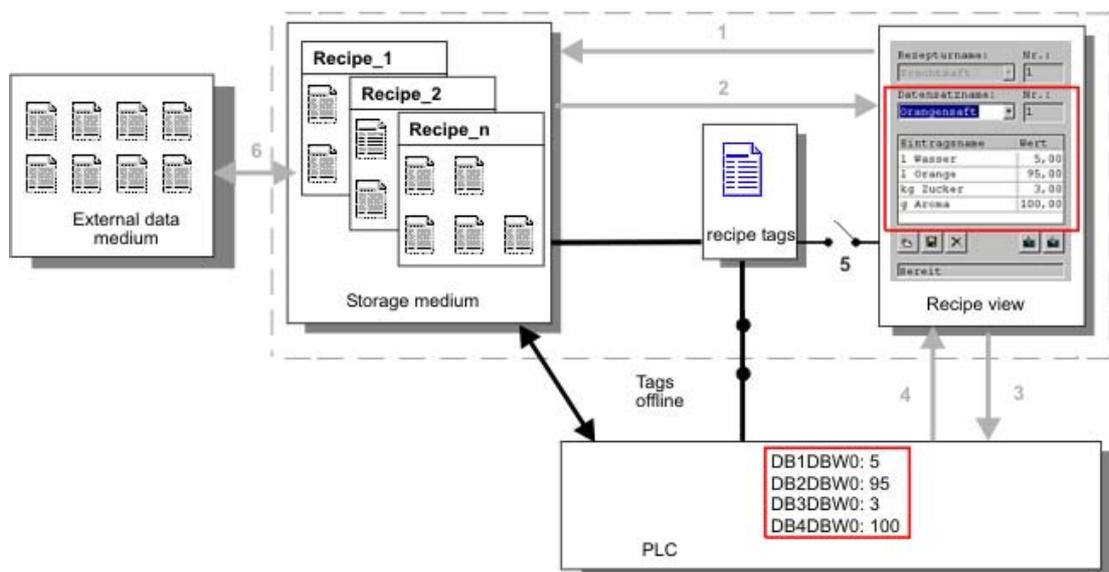
Depending on the extent of the recipe, you either configure a recipe view or create a recipe screen.

### 10.4.4 Scenario: Manual production sequence

#### Objective

The production data are to be requested by the PLC according to the work piece to be processed and displayed on the HMI device for inspection. You want to be able to correct the transferred production data online, if necessary.

#### Sequence

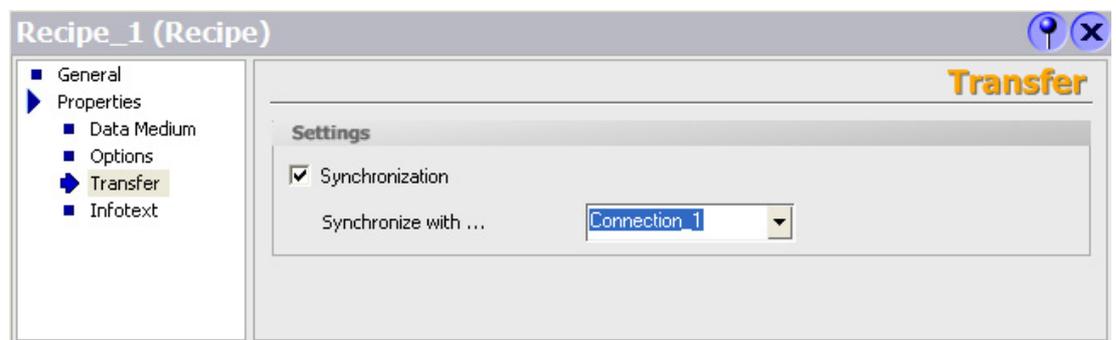
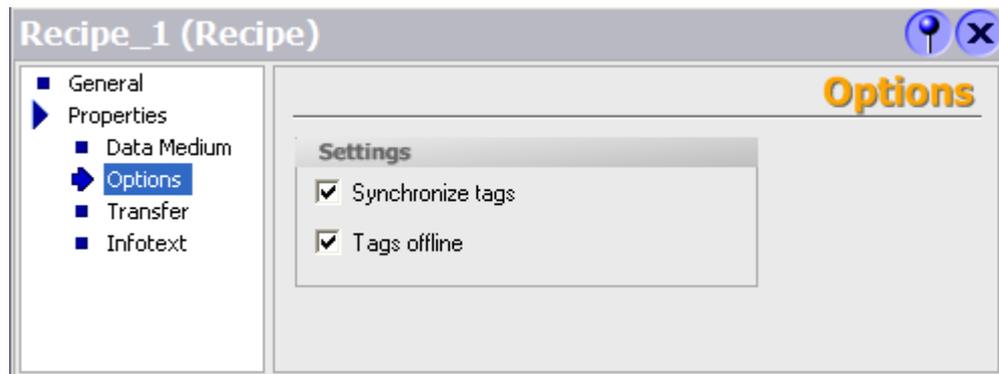


A reading device connected to the PLC reads a bar code on the work piece to be processed. The recipe data record names correspond to the respective bar code names. This will enable the PLC to load the necessary recipe data record from the storage medium of the HMI device. The recipe data record is displayed for inspection. Changes are transferred immediately to the PLC.

#### Configuration in WinCC flexible

You configure the recipe along with the associated tags.

Production data are to be transferred to the PLC, so it is necessary to synchronize with the PLC to prevent the data from accidentally overwriting each other. The tags are to be transferred to the PLC. Make the following settings for the recipe in the property view:



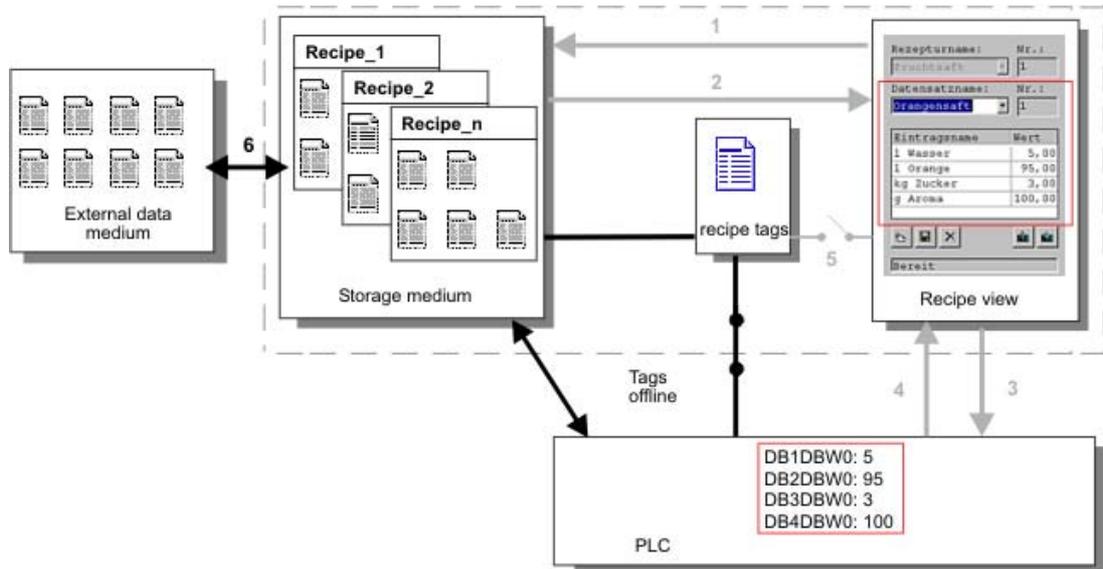
Depending on the extent of the recipe, you either configure a recipe view or create a recipe screen.

#### 10.4.5 Scenario: Automatic production sequence

##### Objective

You want production to be executed automatically. The production data should be transferred directly to the PLC either from the data storage medium in the HMI device or from an external data storage medium. The production data do not have to be displayed.

Sequence



Production can be controlled using one or more "Scripts", which transfer production data records automatically to the PLC. The sequence can be checked using the return values of the utilized functions.

Configuration in WinCC flexible

You can implement the automatic production sequence with available system functions. The "ImportDataRecords" system function loads data records from a CSV file to the data medium. The "SetDataRecordTagsToPLC" system function transfers a data record from the data storage medium to the PLC.

10.5 Displaying recipes

10.5.1 Viewing and editing recipes in Runtime

Introduction

The WinCC flexible ES offers you two configuration options of viewing and editing recipes and their corresponding data records in Runtime on the HMI device:

- Recipe view
- Recipe screen

Recipe view

The recipe view is a screen object that is configured in the "Screens" editor. For example, you can specify what operating function the recipe view will have in Runtime:

| Entry Name | Value |
|------------|-------|
|------------|-------|

The recipe view shows recipe data records in tabular form. The Recipe view is particularly useful if data records are small in size or only a few values are to be modified.

### Simple recipe view

On HMI devices which have a display smaller than 6" (e.g. OP 77B), the simple Recipe view is used to display and edit recipes.

|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| 1 | Data record name: 1 |
| 2 | Data record name: 2 |
| 3 | Data record name: 3 |
| 4 | Data record name: 4 |

The simple recipe view consists of three areas:

- Recipe selection
- Recipe data record selection
- Recipe entries

In the simple recipe view, each area is shown separately on the HMI device. The simple recipe view always begins with the recipe selection.

### Recipe screen

A recipe screen is a process screen with a customized input screen form that you create by setting up input/output fields and other screen objects in the "Screens" editor. This makes it possible for you to input parameter data in the context of machine visualization. The I/O fields for a recipe can be distributed over multiple recipe screens, which allows you a topical organization of recipe elements. The operating functions for the recipe screens must be configured explicitly in the process screens.

|                   |    |                  |      |
|-------------------|----|------------------|------|
| Litre Water       | 50 | Recipe name      | No.: |
| Litre Concentrate | 50 | Orange           | 1    |
| Kilo Sugar        | 30 | Data record name | No.: |
| Gram Aroma        | 50 | Nectar           | 2    |

|      |               |
|------|---------------|
| Save | Data to PLS   |
| Load | Data from PLS |

### 10.5.2 Behavior of the recipe view in Runtime

#### Screen change

If you change to another screen and have not yet saved changes to the recipe data in the recipe view, you will be prompted to save the recipe data. The recipe name and the name of the recipe record are displayed to show which recipe data have not been saved yet.

If you change to a process screen that contains a recipe view with loaded recipe data, the recipe data will be automatically updated.

#### Operating the recipe view with softkeys

The Recipe view can be operated with function keys, e.g. when the HMI device does not have touch functionality. System functions allow you to assign functions such as "Save data record" to the function keys of the HMI device.

## 10.6 Recipe data record administration

### 10.6.1 Recipe data record administration

#### Recipe data record administration

In Runtime you can, based on the configuration

- Create new recipe data records
- Copy recipe data records
- Edit recipe data records
- Delete recipe data records

That is, you can either edit recipe data records in the recipe view or screen, or import recipe data records from a CSV file.

### Creating new recipe records

1. Select the recipe on the HMI device in which you want to create a new recipe data record.
2. Use the "Add data record" button in the recipe view or the corresponding button on the HMI device that has this function.

A new data record with the next available number will be created. If you change the new data record number of an existing data record number, the data record is overwritten.

3. Enter a name for the recipe data records.
4. Enter the values for the recipe data records.  
The configuration data may already contain default values for the recipe data record.
5. Use the "Save" button in the recipe view or the corresponding button on the HMI device that has this function.

### Result

The new recipe data records will be saved to the selected recipe. If the recipe data records already exists, a system alarm will be output to the screen.

### Copying a recipe data record

You copy a recipe record by saving it under a new name.

1. Select the recipe on the HMI device in which you want to edit an existing recipe data record.
2. Select the recipe data record that you want to edit on the HMI device.
3. Assign a new name to the recipe data record.

As soon as you close the "Recipe data record" input field, the next free recipe data record number will be automatically assigned to the recipe data record. You may change the recipe data record number.

4. Use the "Save" button in the recipe view or the corresponding button on the HMI device that has this function.

### Result

The recipe data record is stored under the new name.

### Modify recipe record

1. Select the recipe on the HMI device in which you want to edit an existing recipe data record.
2. Select the recipe data record that you want to edit on the HMI device.
3. Replace the old values with new ones.

4. Use the "Save" button in the recipe view or the corresponding button on the HMI device that has this function.

## Result

The modified values are applied to the recipe data record.

## Delete recipe data record

1. Select the recipe on the HMI device in which you want to delete an existing recipe data record.
2. Select the recipe data record that you want to delete on the HMI device.
3. On the recipe view, select "Delete data record", or use the relevant HMI device button which is assigned this function.

## Result

The recipe data record is deleted from the data medium of the HMI device.

## 10.6.2 Synchronizing a recipe data record

### Introduction

In Runtime, differences between the indicated values and the actual values of the recipe tags may arise as a result of data input in recipe views or modification of recipe tags. Depending on the configuration, you can synchronize the values displayed in the recipe view with the recipe tags and values of the PLC. This synchronization is performed for each one of the recipe tags contained in the recipe data record.

### Requirements

A recipe data record is displayed in the recipe view. The value of recipe tags can be changed, for example by teach-ins.

### Procedure

1. Use the "Synchronization with controller" button in the recipe view or the corresponding button that has this function.

## Result

- The system always updates the current value of the recipe view with the up-to-date recipe tag value.
- When the value shown in the recipe view is more recent than the current recipe tag value, the system writes this value to the recipe tag.

### 10.6.3 Read recipe data record from PLC

#### Introduction

You can read values from the PLC and write them to a recipe data record. For example, you can do this in machine teach-in mode in order to save the positioning data of axes as a recipe data record.

The read values are written to the recipe record that is currently displayed on the HMI device.

#### Procedure

1. Select the recipe on the HMI device.
2. On the HMI device, select the recipe data record of which you want to fetch the values from the PLC.
3. Use the "Read from PLC" button in the recipe view or the corresponding button on the HMI device that has this function.
4. Use the "Save" button in the recipe view or the corresponding button on the HMI device that has this function.

#### Result

The values are read from the PLC, visualized on the HMI device and saved to the recipe data record.

### 10.6.4 Transfer recipe record to PLC

#### Introduction

You can edit recipes offline or online.

- Offline: The data are transferred to the PLC after the relevant command is executed.
- Online: The data are transferred immediately to the PLC

In the recipe view, data are always edited offline. The configuration of the recipe screen determines whether the recipe data are edited offline or online.

When you edit data offline, you have to transfer the changed data to the PLC.

#### Procedure

1. Select the recipe on the HMI device.
2. On the HMI device, select the recipe data record of which you want to transfer the values to PLC.
3. Use the "Write to PLC" button in the recipe view or the corresponding button on the HMI device that has this function.

## Result

The values of the recipe record are transferred to the PLC.

## 10.6.5 Exporting and importing recipe data records

### Introduction

Based on your configuration, you can either export recipe data records to a CSV file for editing in MS Excel, for example, or import these from a CSV file. The extent to which you can influence these processes is determined by the project configuration. Various input boxes may be configured on the user interface:

- Input of the path to the CSV file
- Selection of the recipe data records for export
- Overwriting an existing CSV file

### Export recipe data record

#### Requirements

Export functions are configured.

#### Procedure

1. Customize the export settings on the user interface of the HMI device, for example, by setting the path to the CSV file.
2. Press the button or the key on the HMI device configured with the "Export recipe records" function.

#### Result

The recipe data record are exported to a CSV file.

---

#### Note

New data records created in Runtime can be exported to an external file.

---

### Importing recipe records

#### Requirements

Import functions are configured.

## Procedure

1. Customize the import settings on the user interface of the HMI device, for example, by setting the path to the CSV file.
2. Use the button or the key on the HMI device which is assigned the "Import recipe records" function.

## Result

The recipe data record are imported. If the structure of the CSV file is different from the recipe structure, deviations are treated as follows:

- Any additional values in the CSV file will be rejected.
- If the CSV file contains values of the wrong data type, the configured default value is set in the recipe record.

Example:

The CSV file contains values that show the tank contents and were input as floating point numbers. However, the corresponding recipe tag expects an integer value. In this case, the system discards the imported value and uses the configured default.

- The system also applies the configured default value to the recipe data record if the CSV file contains an insufficient number of values.

## 10.6.6 Reactions to modifications of the recipe structure

### Introduction

Engineering for the purpose of machine retrofitting may also influence the recipe structure. Previously created recipe data records can nevertheless continue to be used.

### Effects

If the structure of the recipe record is different from the defined address ranges in the PLC, deviations are handled as follows:

- Any additional values in the recipe record will be rejected.
- If the recipe record contains values of the incorrect data type, the default will be used in the recipe record.

Example: The recipe record contains values that show the tank contents and were input as floating point numbers. However, the corresponding recipe tag expects an integer value. In this case, the transferred value is rejected and the default value is used.

The system also applies the default value to the recipe data record, if the recipe data record contains an insufficient number of values.

---

### Caution

When a tag is renamed, the assignment is lost.

---

## 10.7 Example

### 10.7.1 Example: Creating a recipe

#### Task

In this example, you create three recipes for a fruit juice mixing machine. The fruit juice mixing machine is to be used to produce orange, apple, and tropical fruit flavors, based on mixing ratios for fruit drinks, nectar, and juice.

#### Settings

The settings relate to an HMI device which is connected to a SIMATIC S7-300 or SIMATIC S7-400 via MPI.

In this example, you need the following tags, flags, recipes, and recipe data record values:

#### Tags:

| Name              | PLC connection | Address        | Type    |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|---------|
| Liter water       | Yes            | DB 120, DBW 0  | Integer |
| Liter concentrate | Yes            | DB 120, DBW 4  | Integer |
| Kilo sugar        | Yes            | DB 120, DBW 8  | Integer |
| Gram flavoring    | Yes            | DB 120, DBW 12 | Integer |

#### Flag:

| Name        | Address       |
|-------------|---------------|
| Data record | DB 100, DBW 0 |

#### Recipe (basic settings):

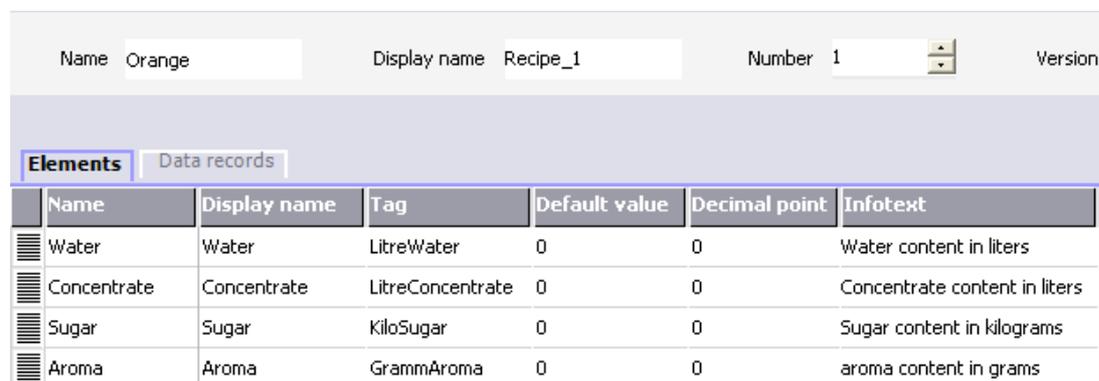
| Recipe element    | Associated tag    |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| Liter water       | Liter water       |
| Liter concentrate | Liter concentrate |
| Kilo sugar        | Kilo sugar        |
| Gram flavoring    | Gram flavoring    |

#### Recipe data record values:

| Data record name | Liter water | Liter concentrate | Kilo sugar | Gram flavoring |
|------------------|-------------|-------------------|------------|----------------|
| Fruit drink      | 30          | 70                | 45         | 600            |
| Nectar           | 50          | 50                | 10         | 300            |
| Juice            | 5           | 95                | 3          | 100            |

## Procedure

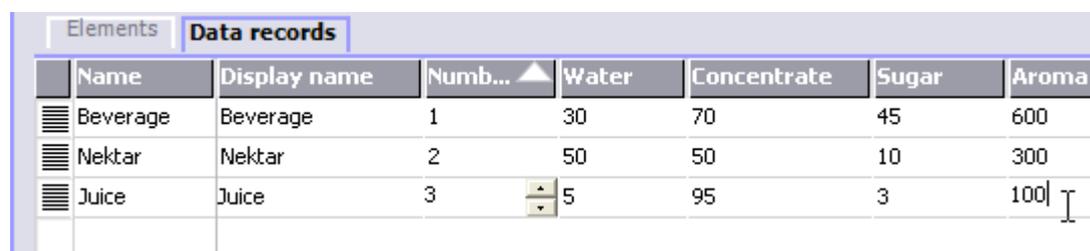
1. Create the following tags with the settings indicated earlier: Liter water, Liter concentrate, Kilo sugar and Gram flavoring.
2. Create the orange, apple, and tropical fruit recipes with the settings indicated above.



| Name        | Display name | Tag              | Default value | Decimal point | Infotext                      |
|-------------|--------------|------------------|---------------|---------------|-------------------------------|
| Water       | Water        | LitreWater       | 0             | 0             | Water content in liters       |
| Concentrate | Concentrate  | LitreConcentrate | 0             | 0             | Concentrate content in liters |
| Sugar       | Sugar        | KiloSugar        | 0             | 0             | Sugar content in kilograms    |
| Aroma       | Aroma        | GrammAroma       | 0             | 0             | aroma content in grams        |

Figure 10-1 Recipe with recipe elements

3. Configure each recipe in such a way that you can edit the recipe data records on a recipe screen. The values of the recipe tags should not be transferred automatically to the PLC.
4. Create the data records indicated above in each recipe. Enter the values indicated above in each of the data records.



| Name     | Display name | Numb... | Water | Concentrate | Sugar | Aroma |
|----------|--------------|---------|-------|-------------|-------|-------|
| Beverage | Beverage     | 1       | 30    | 70          | 45    | 600   |
| Nektar   | Nektar       | 2       | 50    | 50          | 10    | 300   |
| Juice    | Juice        | 3       | 5     | 95          | 3     | 100   |

Figure 10-2 Recipe with recipe data record values

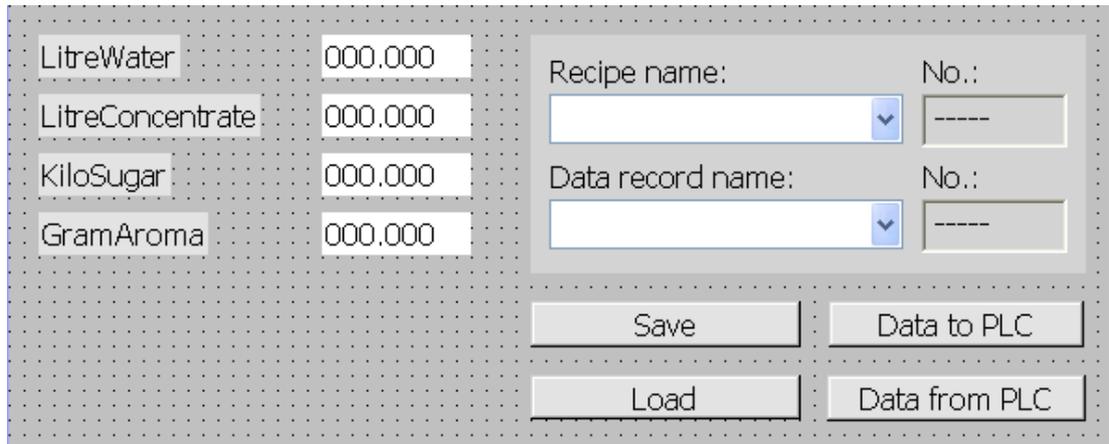
## Result

The orange, apple, and tropical fruit flavor recipes have been created. In the "Configure recipe screen" example, you create a recipe screen in which you create an individual input screen form.

### 10.7.2 Example: Configuring a recipe screen

#### Task

In this example, you create a recipe screen for the visualization of values of the fruit juice mixing machine. You use a recipe view to select the recipes and their associated recipe data records. You should be able to load and save the values of the recipe data records, and transfer them to and read them from the PLC.



### Requirements

The "Creating a recipe" sample application has been carried out.

The "Fruit juice mixing machine" process screen has been created and is opened.

### Settings

In this example, you need the following tags and buttons with the indicated settings:

#### Tags:

| Name               | PLC connection | Type    |
|--------------------|----------------|---------|
| RecipeNumber       | No             | Integer |
| Data record number | No             | Integer |

#### Buttons:

| Labeling          | Configured event | System function               |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|
| Load              | Press            | LoadDataRecord                |
| Save              | Press            | SaveDataRecord                |
| Data to PLC       | Press            | Write data record tags to PLC |
| Data from the PLC | Press            | GetDataRecordTagsFromPLC      |

### Procedure

1. Drag-and-drop the "Liter water", "Liter concentrate", "Kilo sugar", and "Gram flavoring" tags from the object view to the "Fruit juice mixing machine" process screen.  
Four I/O fields are created and linked by the specified tags.
2. Configure a recipe view containing only the drop-down lists for the recipe name and data record name. Link the recipe view to the "Recipe number" and "Data record number" (recipe data record number) tags in the "General" group in the property view.

3. Assign the settings described above to each one of the four buttons. Transfer each "Recipe number" and "Data record number" tag as a parameter for the recipe number and recipe data record number.

## Result

In Runtime, you can select the recipe and the associated recipe data record from the recipe view. Click "Load" to load the recipe data record values and display these in the configured I/O fields. Click "To PLC" to write the recipe data record values to the associated tags and to transfer the recipe data record values to the PLC.



## Maintenance/Service

### 11.1 Clean screen/keyboard foil

#### 11.1.1 General information

##### Introduction

Clean the HMI device screen or keyboard foil at regular intervals. Use a damp cloth.



---

##### Caution

##### Cleaning the keyboard foil of key devices

Clean the HMI device after it has been switched off. This ensures that functions are not inadvertently triggered by touching the keys or the touch screen.

---

##### Cleaning agents

Use only water with liquid soap or a screen cleaning foam. Never spray the cleaning agent directly onto the screen. Apply it to a cloth. Never use aggressive solvents or scouring powder.

#### 11.1.2 Notes on the touch panel

##### Clean screen

Only applies to HMI devices with a touch screen:

The HMI device touch screen can be cleaned when switched on and when operating normally if touch screen input has been suppressed by means of an appropriately configured operating element (Clean Screen). After the Clean Screen function has been activated, all input via the touch screen operating elements is deactivated for a defined period of time. The time remaining until the end of operating suppression is indicated by a progress bar.

---

**Notice**

**Suppressing operating elements**

Only clean the screen during operation when Clean Screen is activated. Pay attention to the end of operating suppression by the Clean Screen.

Otherwise, incorrect operations may be initiated.

---

**Protective foil**

A protective foil is available for the touch screens on HMI devices. The necessary ordering information is provided in the Siemens Catalog ST 80. The protective foil is not part of the material supplied with the HMI device.

The self-adhesive foil prevents the screen being scratched and soiled. In addition, the matt surface of the foil reduces reflections in disadvantageous lighting conditions.

The protective foil can be removed as necessary without leaving any adhesive residue on the screen.

---

**Caution**

**Remove protective foil**

Never use sharp or pointed tools, such as a knife, to remove the protective foil. This may damage the touch screen.

---

## 11.2 Replacing the optional backup battery

### Function of the backup battery

An optional backup battery is available for the HMI device. The battery ensures that in the event of a power failure, the HMI device's internal hardware clock continues to run.

Under normal operating conditions, the battery has a service life of approx. four years. It is not supplied with the HMI device.

### Supply source

The battery can be ordered from the Siemens spare parts service. It is shipped ready for installation with a cable and connector. Please refer to the Siemens Catalog ST80 for the order number.

## Requirements



### Caution

Change the battery while power is still being supplied to ensure the internal hardware clock continues to run.

The battery must be changed by a properly qualified person.

Before replacing the battery, refer to the ESD Guidelines.

## Procedure

1. Unplug the battery cable connector from the two-pin socket in the HMI device.
2. The battery is normally secured to the back of the HMI device by two cable ties. Cut the cable ties, using pliers for instance, and remove the empty battery.
3. Secure the new battery with two cable ties to the back of the HMI device.
4. Insert the battery lead connector back into the socket. The plug is coded to prevent reversed poling.

## General information

Please observe the following safety notes to ensure correct handling and disposal of lithium batteries:



### Warning

The lithium battery can explode if not handled properly. The lithium battery should:

- never be charged
- not be opened
- not be short-circuited
- be safeguarded against reversed poling
- of 100 °C
- be protected against direct sunlight

Do not allow condensation to form on batteries.

If you have to ship a battery, ensure compliance with the Dangerous Goods Ordinance for the shipping agent concerned (coding obligation).

Treat used lithium batteries as special waste. Pack them separately in leakproof plastic bags for disposal.

**See also**

Backup battery (Page 1-9)

ESD guidelines (Page A-2)

Interfaces (Page 4-4)

## Technical Specifications

### 12.1 Dimension drawings

#### 12.1.1 Dimensions MP 370 12" Touch

##### Unit dimensions

Dimensions of the MP 370 12" Touch:

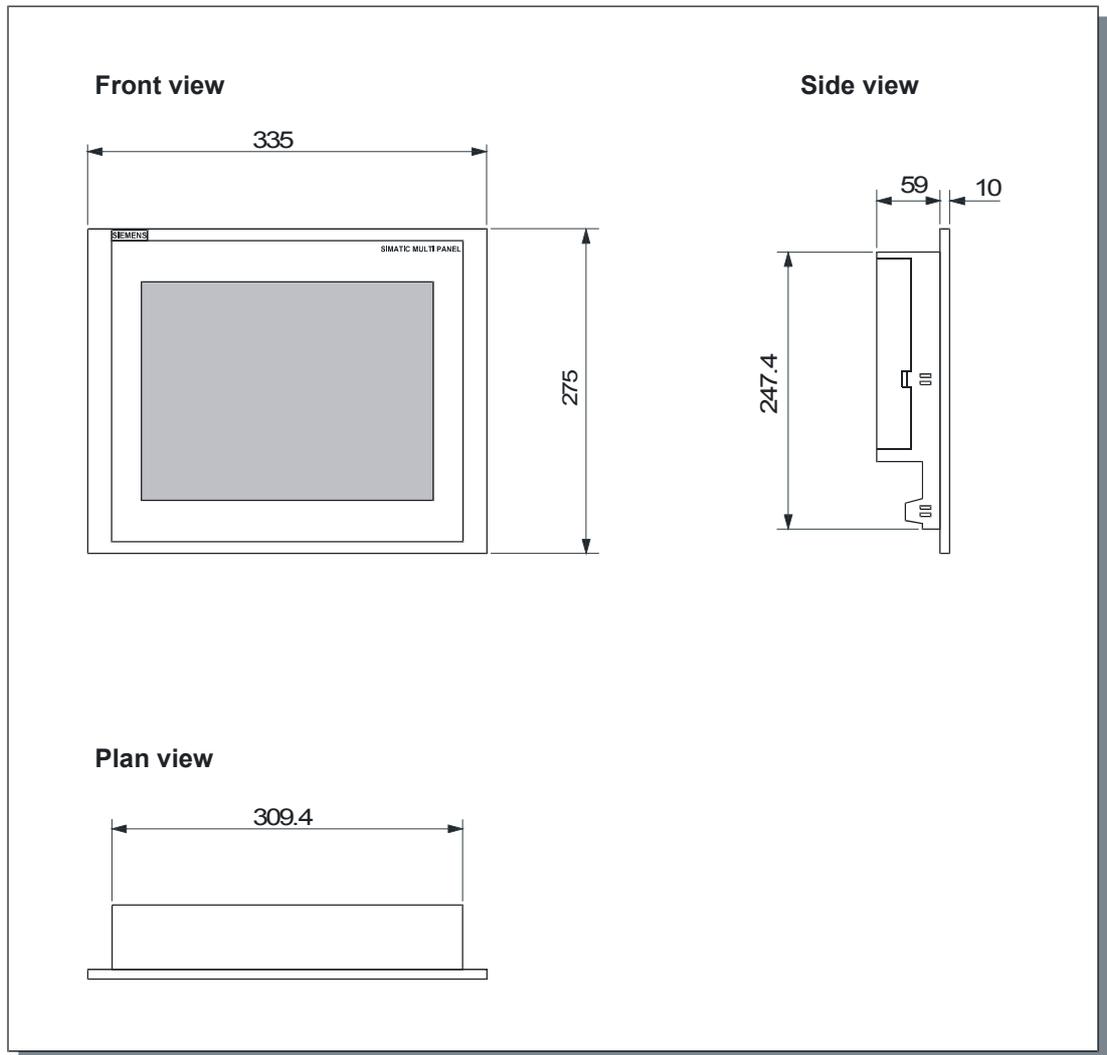


Figure 12-1 Dimensions of the MP 370 12" Touch

## 12.1.2 Dimensions MP 370 15" Touch

### Unit dimensions

Dimensions of the MP 370 15" Touch:

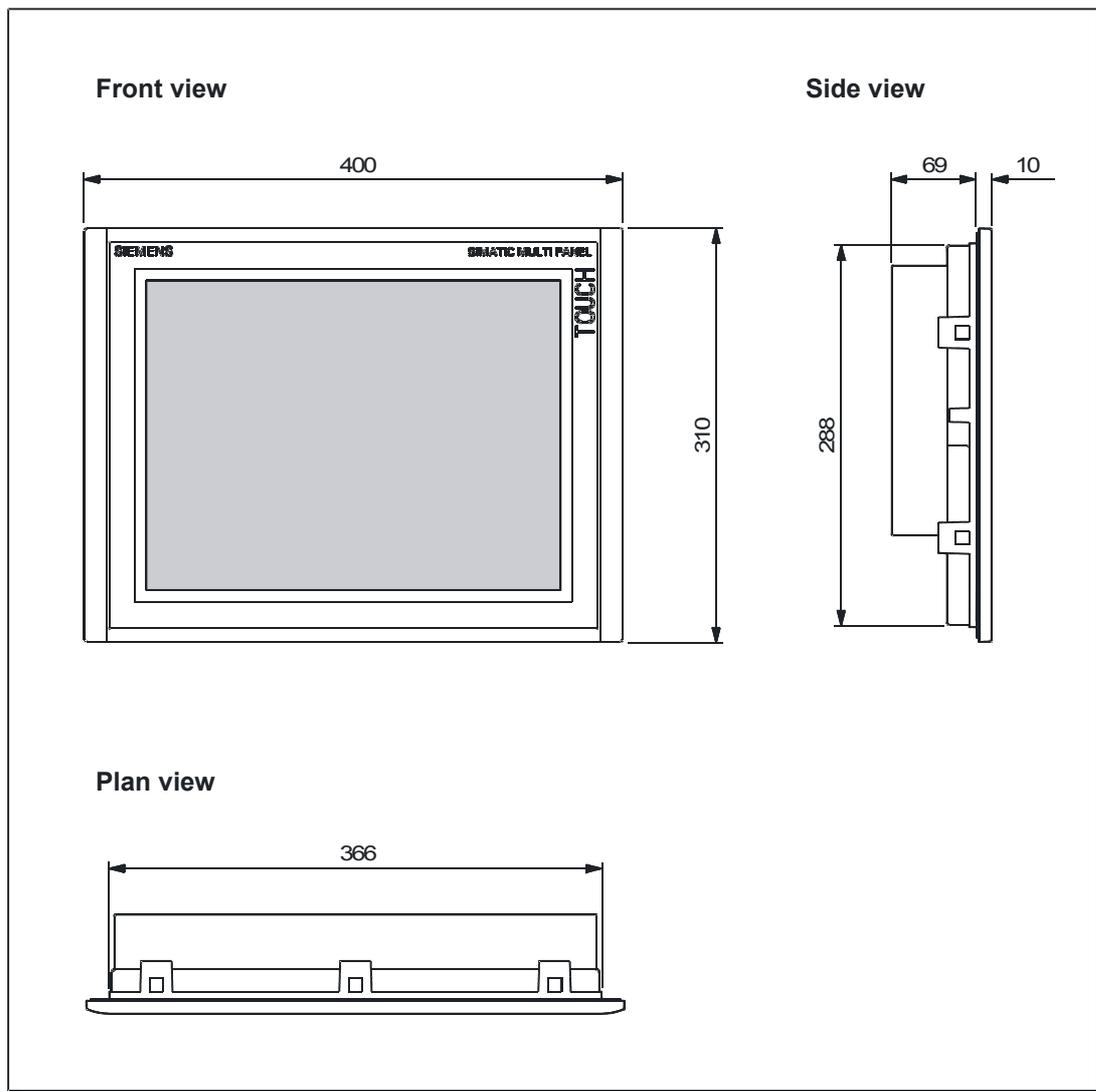


Figure 12-2 Dimensions of the MP 370 15" Touch

### 12.1.3 Dimensions MP 370 12" Key

#### Unit dimensions

Dimensions of the MP 370 12" Touch:

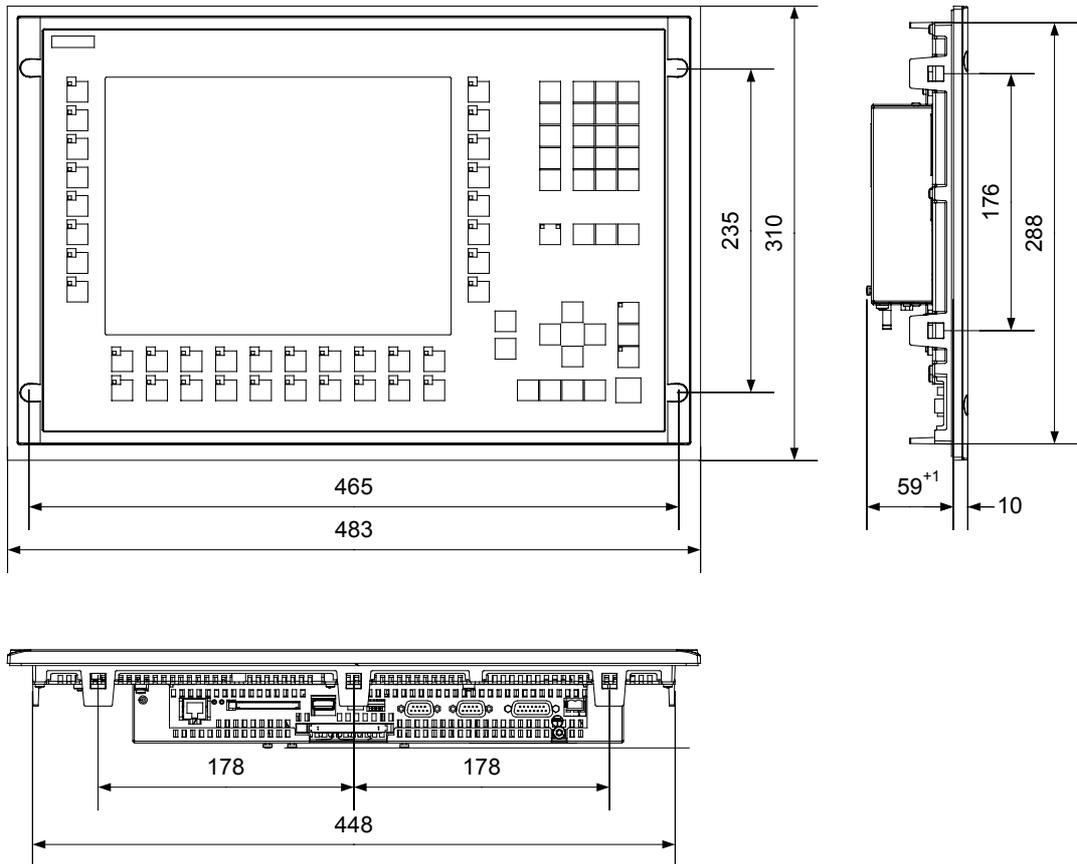


Figure 12-3 Dimensions of the MP 370 12" Key

## 12.2 Technical specifications

### Technical specifications

| Housing                     | MP 370 12" Key                              | MP 370 12" Touch                            | MP 370 15" Touch                            |
|-----------------------------|---|---|---|
| External dimensions (W x H) | 483 mm x 310 mm                             | 335 mm x 275 mm                             | 400 mm x 310 mm                             |
| Installation cutout (W x H) | 450 <sup>+1</sup> mm x 290 <sup>+1</sup> mm | 310 <sup>+1</sup> mm x 248 <sup>+1</sup> mm | 368 <sup>+1</sup> mm x 290 <sup>+1</sup> mm |
| Installation depth          | 59 mm                                       | 59 mm                                       | 69 mm                                       |
| Degree of protection        | IP65/NEMA 4x INDOOR USE ONLY                |   |   |
| Front                       | IP65/NEMA 4x INDOOR USE ONLY                |   |   |
| Rear panel                  | IP20  |   |   |
| Weight                      | Approx. 5,1 kg                              | Approx. 4,5 kg                              | Approx. 5.7 kg                              |

| Processor |                 |
|-----------|-----------------|
| Type      | 64 bit RISC CPU |

| Memory             |   |
|--------------------|---|
| Memory             | Free for user data: 12 MB flash memory (max. 7 MB of which is for WinCC flexible configurations)  |
| Bulk storage       |   |
| • Slot for CF card | e.g. ATA Flash card   |
| • Slot for PC card | E.g. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ATA Flash card</li> <li>• SRAM card</li> <li>• NE2000-compatible Ethernet card</li> </ul> |

| Software         |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| Operating system | Microsoft Windows CE |

| Color display                      | MP 370 12" Key        | MP 370 12" Touch                            | MP 370 15" Touch |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|---|------------------|
| Type                               | TFT LCD               | TFT LCD with touch panel (analog resistive) |                  |
| Active screen diagonal             | 12,1 "                | 12,1 "                                      | 15,1 "           |
| Resolution (pixels)                | 800 x 600 (Super VGA) |   | 1024 x 768 (XGA) |
| Possible colors                    | 256                   |   |                  |
| Back-lighting                      | CCFL tubes            |   |                  |
| Half brightness life <sup>1)</sup> | approx. 50,000 hours  |   |                  |

- 1) Time period the brightness of the lighting tube only achieves 50% of its original value. The specified value depends on the operating temperature.

| <b>Keyboard</b>                      |  | <b>MP 370 12" Key</b>                |
|--------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| Type                                 |  | Membrane keyboard                    |
| System keys with dedicated functions |  | 38 (3 with LEDs)                     |
| Configurable function keys           |  |                                      |
| Number                               |  | 36 (with LEDs)                       |
| for local assignment                 |  | 36                                   |
| Labeling                             |  | System-specific with labeling strips |

| <b>Acoustic acknowledgement</b> |  | <b>MP 370 12" Touch / MP 370 15" Touch</b> |
|---------------------------------|--|--|
| In the case of touch control    |  | × (can be disabled)                        |

| <b>Power supply</b>                      | <b>MP 370 12" Key</b>        | <b>MP 370 12" Touch</b>      | <b>MP 370 15" Touch</b>      |
|--|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Rated voltage                            |                              | +24 V DC                     |                              |
| Permissible range                        |                              | +24 V DC -15%, +20%          |                              |
| Max. permissible transients              |                              | 35 V (500 msec)              |                              |
| Time between two transients              |                              | Min. 50 s                    |                              |
| Power consumption                        |                              |                              |                              |
| Typical:                                 | Approx. 0,6 A                | Approx. 0,6 A                | Approx. 1,4 A                |
| Max. constant current:                   | Approx. 0,9 A                | Approx. 0,9 A                | Approx. 1.8 A                |
| Power on current surge I <sup>2</sup> t: | Approx. 0.5 A <sup>2</sup> s | Approx. 0.5 A <sup>2</sup> s | Approx. 0.5 A <sup>2</sup> s |
| Fuse, internal                           |                              | Electronic                   |                              |

| <b>Backup battery (option)</b> |                        |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| Type                           | Lithium battery        |
| Voltage/Capacity <sup>2)</sup> | 3.6 V / approx. 1.5 Ah |
| Service life                   | Approx. 4 years        |

- 2) All rights reserved

| Network connection   |   |                                     |
|--|---|-------------------------------------|
| Type   | 1 x Ethernet (10/100 Mbit)              |                                     |
| Ambient conditions   |   |                                     |
|  | MP 370 12" Key                          | MP 370 12" Touch / MP 370 15" Touch |
| Installation position  | Vertical                                |                                     |
| Max. permissible angle of inclination without external ventilation | ±35°                                    |                                     |
| Max. permissible ambient temperature                               |   |                                     |
| Operation  |   |                                     |
| • Vertical installation  | 0 ... +50 °C                            |                                     |
| • Installation angled from the perpendicular to max. 35°           | 0 ... +35 °C                            |                                     |
| • Shipping, storage  | -20 ... +60 °C                          |                                     |
| Relative humidity  |   |                                     |
| Operation, transport, storage                                      | Max. 85%, no condensation               |                                     |
| Shock loading  |   |                                     |
| Operation  | 15 g / 11 ms                            |                                     |
| Shipping, storage  | 25 g / 6 ms                             |                                     |
| Vibration  |   |                                     |
| Operation  | 0,075 mm (10 - 58 Hz) 1 g (58 - 500 Hz) |                                     |
| Shipping, storage  | 3.5 mm (5 - 8.5 Hz) 1 g (8.5 - 500 Hz)  |                                     |
| Barometric pressure  |   |                                     |
| Operation  | 706...1030 hPa                          |                                     |
| Shipping, storage  | 581...1030 hPa                          |                                     |

## 12.3 EMC requirements

### EMC requirements

Compliance of the named products with the regulations of Directive 89/336 EEC is verified by conformance with the following standards:

| Noise immunity                                     | Norms        |   |
|--|--------------|---|
| Static discharge (contact discharge/air discharge) | EN 61000-4-2 | 6 kV/8 kV   |
| RF irradiation                                     | EN 61000-4-3 | 10 V/m, 80% AM,<br>1 kHz                                  |
| Pulse modulation                                   | ENV 50204    | 900 MHz ±5 MHz<br>10 V/m <sub>eff.</sub> , 50% ED, 200 Hz |

| Noise immunity     | Norms        |  |
|--------------------|--------------|--|
| RF conduction      | EN 61000-4-6 | 150 kHz - 80 MHz<br>10 V, 80% AM, 1 kHz  |
| Burst interference | EN 61000-4-4 |  |
| Supply lines       |              | 2 kV   |
| Process data lines |              | 2 kV   |
| Signal lines       |              | 1 kV   |
| Surge coupling     | EN 61000-4-5 | 1 kV with choke,   |
| Power supply cable |              | Type DEHNrail (Order No. 901 104)<br>2 kV with choke,<br>Type DEHNrail (Order No. 901 104) |
| Magnetic fields    | EN 61000-4-8 | 30A/m 50/60 Hz   |

| Radio interference                             |         |
|--|---------|
| Radio interference level complying to EN 55011 | Class A |

## 12.4 Interface description

### IF1A

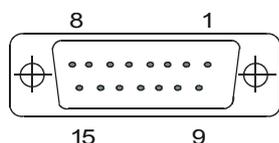


Table 12-1 15-pin Cannon connector

| Pin | RS 232 | TTY       | General |
|-----|--------|-----------|---------|
| 1   |        | Screening |         |
| 2   | -      | RXD-      | RXD-    |
| 3   | RXD    | -         | -       |
| 4   | TXD    | -         | -       |
| 5   | CTS    | -         | -       |
| 6   | -      | TXD+      | -       |
| 7   | -      | TXD-      | RTS     |
| 8   |        | Screening |         |
| 9   | -      | RXD+      | -       |
| 10  | RTS    | -         | -       |
| 11  | -      | +20 mA    | -       |
| 12  |        | GND       |         |

| Pin | RS 232 | TTY         | General |
|-----|--------|-------------|---------|
| 13  | -      | +20 mA      | -       |
| 14  |        | +5 V/100 mA |         |
| 15  |        | GND         |         |

### IF1B

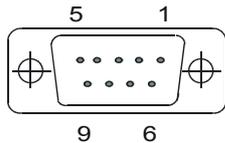


Table 12-2 9-pin Sub-D socket (configuration via switch)

| Pin | RS-422 | RS 485 / PROFIBUS-DP / MPI |
|-----|--------|----------------------------|
| 1   |        | N.C.                       |
| 2   |        | N.C.                       |
| 3   | TXD+   | Data B                     |
| 4   | RXD+   | RTS-AS                     |
| 5   |        | GND (floating)             |
| 6   |        | +5 V (floating)            |
| 7   |        | N.C.                       |
| 8   | TXD-   | Data A                     |
| 9   | RXD-   | -                          |

### IF2

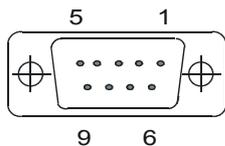
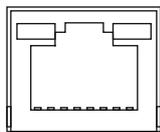


Table 12-3 9-pin Sub-D plug (pin)

| Pin | RS 232 |
|-----|--------|
| 1   | DCD    |
| 2   | RXD    |
| 3   | TXD    |
| 4   | DTR    |
| 5   | GND    |
| 6   | DSR    |
| 7   | RTS    |
| 8   | CTS    |
| 9   | RI     |

### Ethernet interface

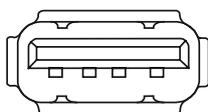


1

Table 12-4 RJ45 plug connection

| Pin | RJ45         |
|-----|--------------|
| 1   | 10BaseT: TX+ |
| 2   | 10BaseT: TX- |
| 3   | 10BaseT: RX+ |
| 4   | -            |
| 5   | -            |
| 6   | 10BaseT: RX- |
| 7   | -            |
| 8   | -            |

### USB interface



1

Table 12-5 USB standard plug

| Pin | USB    |
|-----|--------|
| 1   | +5V    |
| 2   | +5V    |
| 3   | USB-DM |
| 4   | USB-DP |
| 5   | 0V     |
| 6   | 0V     |

### See also

Connecting the PLC (Page 4-11)

## Appendix

### A.1 Certificates and Directives

#### A.1.1 Approvals

##### Approvals

As of the date of delivery, the following approvals have been granted or their application is pending. Please refer to the rating plate on the back of the HMI device for identification.




---

##### Warning

Personal injury and equipment damage can occur.

Personal injury and equipment damage can occur in hazardous areas if a plug connection is disconnected from the HMI device while the system is running.

In hazardous areas, turn off the power to the HMI device when disconnecting the connectors.

**DO NOT DISCONNECT WHILE CIRCUIT IS LIVE UNLESS LOCATION IS KNOWN TO BE NON HAZARDOUS.**

---

| Approvals    |   |
|--------------|---|
| CE approval  | EMC Directives  |
| C-Tick       | EMC radio interference, Australia   |
| UL approval  | UL Recognition Mark <sup>1)</sup><br>Underwriters Laboratories (UL) complying with<br>Standard UL 508,<br>File E 116536 |
| UL approval  | In accordance with the UL/CSA Approval<br>Agreement   |
| Ex Zone 2/22 | Ex zone, Europe<br>EN 50021, EN 50281-1-1   |

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| <b>Approvals</b> |  |
| FM approval      | <p>FM approval</p> <p>Complying with Factory Mutual Approval Standard Class Number 3611 Hazardous (classified) Locations Class I, Division 2, Group A, B, C, D</p> |

- 1) The UL and CSA file numbers are dependent on the production site. The numbers specified here changes according to the change of production site.

### A.1.2 ESD guidelines

#### What does ESD mean?

Virtually all present-day, electronic modules incorporate highly integrated MOS devices or components. For technological reasons, these electronic components are very sensitive to overvoltage and, consequently, to electrostatic discharge. Therefore, they are identified as follows:

- **ESD – Electrostatically Sensitive Devices**
- **ESD – Electrostatic Sensitive Devices**

The following symbol on cabinet plates, mounting racks and packages draws attention to the use of ESD and, thus, to the contact sensitivity of the assemblies concerned:



Figure A-1 Symbol for ESD

ESDs may be destroyed by voltages and energies that are undetectable to a human. Voltages of this kind occur as soon as a device or an assembly is touched by a person who is not grounded against static electricity. ESDs exposed to such over voltages may not immediately be detected as defective. In the majority of cases, faulty behavior may occur only after a long period of operation.

#### Precautions against electrostatic discharge

Most plastics are capable of carrying high charges. It is therefore imperative that they be kept away from ESDs.

When working with electrostatically sensitive components, make sure that the person, the workstation and the packaging are properly grounded.

## Handling ESD assemblies

A general rule is that ESDs should be touched only when necessary, for example, when maintenance is required.

Only touch devices if

- you are grounded by permanently wearing an ESD wrist strap or
- you are wearing ESD shoes or ESD shoe-grounding protection straps in conjunction with an ESD floor.

Before you touch an electronic assembly, your body must be discharged. The simplest way of doing this is to touch a conductive, grounded object immediately beforehand, e.g. bare metal parts of a cabinet, water pipe etc.

ESDs should not be brought into contact with charge-susceptible and highly insulating materials such as plastic films, insulating tabletops and items of clothing containing synthetic fibers.

Assemblies should be deposited only on conductive surfaces, e.g. tables with an ESD coating, conductive ESD cellular material, ESD bags or ESD shipping containers.

Do not place ESDs near visual display units, monitors or television sets (minimum distance to screen > 10 cm).

Never touch ESDs so that contact is made with module connections or conductor rails.

## Measuring ESD assemblies

Perform measurements on ESD assemblies only when

- the measuring instrument is grounded, e.g. by means of a grounded conductor or
- the measuring head has been briefly discharged before measurements are made with a potential-free measuring instrument, e.g. by touching a bare metal control cabinet.

When soldering, use only grounded soldering irons.

## Shipping ESD assemblies

Always store and ship ESD assemblies and devices in conductive packing, e.g. metallized plastic boxes, metal boxes.

- Packing ESD

If packing is not conductive, ESDs must be conductively wrapped before they are packed. Use conductive foam rubber, ESD bags, domestic aluminum foil or paper, for example; never use plastic bags or foils.

- ESD with fitted battery

With assemblies containing fitted batteries, make sure that the conductive packing does not come into contact with batteries or short-circuit them. If necessary, cover the battery terminals beforehand with suitable insulating material.

## A.2 System alarms

### Introduction

System alarms on the HMI device provide information about internal conditions of the HMI device and PLC.

The following is an overview of when system alarms occur, their causes and the remedies available.

---

#### Note

System alarms are only displayed when an alarm window has been configured. System alarms are issued in the language currently set on the HMI device.

---

### System alarm parameters

The system alarms may contain parameters which are not decoded for the user but which are relevant with respect to the cause of an error. They provide a reference to the source code from the runtime software. These parameters are issued after the text "Error code:".

### System alarm parameters

| Number | Effect/cause   | Remedy   |
|--------|--|--|
| 10000  | The print job cannot be started or was canceled due to an unknown cause. The printer is not correctly configured. or There is no authorization for a network printer.<br>The power supply failed during data transfer. | Check the printer settings, cable connections and the power supply.<br>Set up the printer once again. Obtain a network printer authorization.<br>If the error persists, contact the Hotline! |
| 10001  | No printer is installed or a default printer has not been selected.  | Install a printer and/or select it as the default printer.   |
| 10002  | The graphics buffer for printing is full. Up to two graphics are buffered.   | Wait before triggering print jobs.   |
| 10003  | Graphics can be buffered again.  | -  |
| 10004  | The buffer for printing lines in text mode (e.g. alarms) is full. Up to 1000 lines are buffered.   | Wait before triggering print jobs.   |
| 10005  | Text lines can be buffered again.  | -  |
| 10006  | The Windows printing system reports an error. Refer to the printed text and the error number to determine the possible causes. Nothing is printed or the printout is incorrect.  | Repeat the action if necessary.  |
| 20010  | An error has occurred in the specified script line. The execution of the script was therefore aborted. Note the system alarms that may have occurred prior to this.  | Select the specified script line in the configuration. Ensure that the tags used are the allowed types. Check system functions for the correct number and types of parameters.               |

| Number | Effect/cause  | Remedy  |
|--------|---|---|
| 20011  | An error has occurred in a script that was called by the specified script.<br>The execution of the script was therefore aborted in the called script.<br>Note the system alarms that may have occurred prior to this.             | In the configuration select the script that has been called directly or indirectly by the specified script.<br>Ensure that the tags used are the allowed types.<br>Check system functions for the correct number and types of parameters. |
| 20012  | The configuration data is inconsistent. The script could therefore not be generated.  | Recompile the configuration.  |
| 20013  | The script components from WinCC flexible runtime are not correctly installed. Therefore, no scripts can be executed.   | Reinstall WinCC flexible runtime.   |
| 20014  | The system function returns a value that is not written in any return tag.  | Select the specified script in the configuration.<br>Check whether the script name has been assigned a value.   |
| 20015  | Too many scripts have been triggered in quick succession. When more than 20 scripts are queued for processing, any subsequent scripts are rejected. In this case, the script indicated in the alarm is not executed.              | Find what is triggering the scripts. Extend the times, e.g. the polling time of the tags which trigger the scripts.   |
| 30010  | The tag could not accept the function result, e.g. when it has exceeded the value range.  | Check the tag type of the system function parameter.  |
| 30011  | A system function could not be executed because the function was assigned an invalid value or type in the parameter.  | Check the parameter value and tag type of the invalid parameter. If a tag is used as a parameter, check its value.  |
| 40010  | The system function could not be executed since the parameters could not be converted to a common tag type.   | Check the parameter types in the configuration.   |
| 40011  | The system function could not be executed since the parameters could not be converted to a common tag type.   | Check the parameter types in the configuration.   |
| 50000  | The HMI device is receiving data faster than it is capable of processing. Therefore, no further data is received until the data currently available has been processed. Data exchange then resumes.                               | -   |
| 50001  | Data exchange resumes.  | -   |
| 60000  | This alarm is generated by the function "DisplaySystemEvents". The text to be displayed is transferred to the function as a parameter.  | -   |
| 60010  | The file could not be copied to the defined path because one of the two files is currently open or the source/target path is not available.<br>It is possible that the Windows user has no access rights to one of the two files. | Restart the system function or check the paths of the source/target files. Using Windows NT/2000/XP: The user executing WinCC flexible Runtime must be granted access rights for the files.   |
| 60011  | An attempt was made to copy a file to itself.<br>It is possible that the Windows user has no access rights to one of the two files.   | Check the path of the source/target file.<br>Using Windows NT/2000/XP with NTFS: The user executing WinCC flexible Runtime must be granted access rights for the files.   |
| 70010  | The application could not be started because it could not be found in the path specified or there is insufficient memory.   | Check whether the application exists in the specified path or close other applications.   |
| 70011  | The system time could not be modified.  | Check the time which is to be set.  |

| Number | Effect/cause   | Remedy   |
|--------|--|--|
|        | <p>The error message only appears in connection with area pointer "Date/time PLC". Possible causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An invalid time was transferred in the job mailbox.</li> <li>• The Windows user does not have the right to modify the system time.</li> </ul> <p>If the first parameter in the system alarm is displayed with the value 13, the second parameter indicates the byte containing the incorrect value.</p> | Using Windows NT/2000/XP: The user executing WinCC flexible Runtime must be granted the right to change the system time of the operating system.                                       |
| 70012  | <p>An error occurred when executing the function "StopRuntime" with the option "Runtime and operating system".<br/>Windows and WinCC flexible Runtime are not closed.<br/>One possible cause is that other programs cannot be closed.</p>  | Close all programs currently running.<br>Then close Windows.   |
| 70013  | The system time could not be modified because an invalid value was entered. Incorrect separators may have been used.   | Check the time which is to be set.   |
| 70014  | <p>The system time could not be modified. Possible causes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An invalid time was transferred.</li> <li>• The Windows user does not have the right to modify the system time.</li> <li>• Windows rejects the setting request.</li> </ul>   | Check the time which is to be set.<br>Using Windows NT/2000/XP: The user executing WinCC flexible Runtime must be granted the right to change the system time of the operating system. |
| 70015  | The system time could not be read because Windows rejects the reading function.  | -  |
| 70016  | <p>An attempt was made to select a screen by means of a system function or job. This is not possible because the screen number specified does not exist.<br/>or: a screen could not be generated due to insufficient system memory.</p>  | Check the screen number in the function or job with the screen numbers configured.<br>Assign the numbers to a screen, if necessary.  |
| 70017  | Date/time is not read from the area pointer because the address set in the PLC is either not available or has not been set up.   | Change the address or set up the address in the PLC.   |
| 70018  | Acknowledgment that the password list has been successfully imported.  | -  |
| 70019  | Acknowledgment that the password list has been successfully exported.  | -  |
| 70020  | Acknowledgment for activation of alarm reporting.  | -  |
| 70021  | Acknowledgment for deactivation of alarm reporting.  | -  |
| 70022  | Acknowledgment to starting the Import Password List action.  | -  |
| 70023  | Acknowledgment to starting the Export Password List action.  | -  |
| 70024  | <p>The value range of the tag has been exceeded in the system function.<br/>The calculation of the system function will not be performed.</p>  | Check the desired calculation and correct it if necessary.   |

| Number | Effect/cause  | Remedy  |
|--------|---|---|
| 70025  | The value range of the tag has been exceeded in the system function.<br>The calculation of the system function will not be performed.   | Check the desired calculation and correct it if necessary.  |
| 70026  | No other screens are stored in the internal screen memory.<br>No other screens can be selected.   | -   |
| 70027  | The backup of the RAM file system has been started.   | -   |
| 70028  | The files from the RAM have been copied in the Flash memory.<br>The files from the RAM have been copied in the Flash memory. Following a restart, these saved files will be copied back to the RAM file system.   | -   |
| 70029  | Backup of the RAM file system has failed.<br>No backup copy of the RAM file system has been made.   | Check the settings in the "Control Panel > OP" dialog and save the RAM file system using the "Save Files" button in the "Persistent Storage" tab.   |
| 70030  | The parameters configured for the system function are faulty.<br>The connection to the new PLC was not established.   | Compare the parameters configured for the system function with the parameters configured for the PLC and correct them as necessary.   |
| 70031  | The PLC configured in the system function is not an S7 PLC.<br>The connection to the new PLC was not established.   | Compare the S7 PLC name parameter configured for the system function with the parameters configured for the PLC and correct them as necessary.  |
| 70032  | The object configured with this number in the tab order is not available in the selected screen.<br>The screen changes but the focus is set to the first object.  | Check the number of the tab order and correct it if necessary.  |
| 70033  | An e-mail cannot be sent because a TCP/IP connection to the SMTP server no longer exists. This system alarm is generated only at the first attempt. All subsequent unsuccessful attempts to send an e-mail will no longer generate a system alarm. The event is regenerated when an e-mail has been successfully sent in the meantime.<br>The central e-mail component in WinCC flexible Runtime attempts, in regular intervals (1 minute), to establish the connection to the SMTP server and to send the remaining e-mails. | Check the network connection to the SMTP server and re-establish it if necessary.   |
| 70034  | Following a disruption, the TCP/IP connection to the SMTP server could be re-established.<br>The queued e-mails are then sent.  | -   |
| 70035  | The e-mail queue of the central component in WinCC flexible Runtime responsible for sending e-mails is full. The e-mail could therefore not be entered into the queue and therefore not sent. The cause may be a broken connection to the SMTP server or an overload resulting from too much e-mail traffic.<br>This system alarm is generated only at the first attempt. The next system alarm is only generated when at least one e-mail has been successfully  | Check if <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the network connection still exists or</li> <li>the connection is overloaded (for example, due to reoccurring system alarms resulting from disruptions).</li> </ul> |

| Number | Effect/cause   | Remedy  |
|--------|--|---|
|        | sent to the queue.   |   |
| 70036  | No SMTP server for sending e-mails is configured. A connection to an SMTP server can therefore not be established and no e-mails can be sent. The system alarm is generated by WinCC flexible Runtime the first time an attempt is made to send an e-mail. | Configure an SMTP server:<br>In WinCC flexible Engineering System using "Device settings > Device settings"<br>In the Windows CE operating system using "Control Panel > Internet Settings > Email > SMTP Server" |
| 70037  | An e-mail could not be sent for unknown reasons. The contents of the e-mail will be discarded.   | Check the e-mail parameters (recipient, etc.).  |
| 70038  | The SMTP server has rejected sending or forwarding an e-mail because the domain of the recipient is unknown to the server or because the SMTP server requires authentication. The contents of the e-mail are lost.   | Check the domain of the recipient address or deactivate the authentication on the SMTP server if possible. SMTP authentication is currently not used in WinCC flexible Runtime.                                   |
| 70039  | The syntax of the e-mail address is incorrect or contains illegal characters. The contents of the e-mail are discarded.  | Check the e-mail address of the recipient.  |
| 70040  | The syntax of the e-mail address is incorrect or contains illegal characters.  | -   |
| 80001  | The log specified is filled to the maximum (in percent) and must be stored elsewhere.  | Store the file or table by executing a 'move' or 'copy' function.   |
| 80002  | A line is missing in the specified log.  | -   |
| 80003  | The copying process for logging was not successful. In this case, it is also advisable to check any subsequent system alarms.  | -   |
| 80006  | Logging is not possible, resulting in a permanent loss of the functionality.   | In the case of databases, check whether the corresponding data source exists and restart the system.  |
| 80009  | A copying action has been completed successfully.  | -   |
| 80010  | The storage location was incorrectly entered in WinCC flexible, resulting in a permanent loss of the functionality.  | Configure the storage location for the respective log again and restart the system when full functionality is required.   |
| 80012  | Log entries are stored in a buffer. If the values are read to the buffer faster than they can be physically written (using a hard disk, for example), overloading may occur and recording is then stopped.   | Archive fewer values.<br>or:<br>Increase the logging cycle.   |
| 80013  | The overload status no longer applies. Archiving resumes the recording of all values.  | -   |
| 80014  | The same action was triggered twice in quick succession. Since the process is already in operation, the action is only carried out once.   | -   |
| 80015  | This system alarm is used to report DOS or database errors to the user.  | -   |
| 80016  | The logs are separated by the system function "CloseAllLogs" and the incoming entries exceed the defined buffer size. All entries in the buffer will be deleted.   | Reconnect the logs.   |
| 80017  | The incoming entries exceed the defined buffer size. This can be caused, for example, by several   | Stop the copy action.   |

| Number | Effect/cause  | Remedy   |
|--------|---|--|
|        | copying actions being activated at the same time. All copy jobs will be deleted.  |  |
| 80018  | After executing the system function "OpenAllLogs", all connections between WinCC flexible and the logs have been reestablished. Entries will be rewritten into the logs.  | -  |
| 80019  | After executing the system function "CloseAllLogs" all connections between WinCC flexible and all logs have been severed. Entries will be written to the buffer and written into the logs when a connection is re-established. There is no connection to the storage location and the data medium may be in the process of being exchanged. | -  |
| 80020  | The maximum number of simultaneously activated copy actions has been exceeded. Copying is not executed.   | Wait until the current copying actions have been completed and restart the last copy action.   |
| 80021  | An attempt was made to delete a log which is still involved with a copy action. Deletion has not been executed.   | Wait until the current copying actions have been completed and restart the last action   |
| 80022  | Using the system function "StartSequenceLog", an attempt was made to start a sequential log for a log not configured as such. No sequential log is created.   | Check the project for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The system function "StartSequenceLog" is configured correctly.</li> <li>• The tag parameters are being correctly provided on the HMI device.</li> </ul> |
| 80023  | An attempt was made to copy a log to itself. The log is not copied.   | Check the project for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The system function "CopyLog" is configured correctly.</li> <li>• The tag parameters are being correctly provided on the HMI device.</li> </ul>          |
| 80024  | The system function "CopyLog" is configured not to permit copying when the target log already contains data (Parameter: "Mode"). The log is not copied.   | If necessary, modify the system function "CopyLog" in the project. Before initiating the system function, delete the target log.   |
| 80025  | You have interrupted the copy process. Data written up to this point is retained. Deletion of the target log (if configured) is not executed. The cancellation is documented by a \$RT_ERR\$ error entry at the end of the target log.  | -  |
| 80026  | This notification is issued after all the logs have been successfully initialized. Values are written to the logs from this moment on. Prior to this, no entries are written to the logs even though WinCC flexible Runtime is running.   | -  |
| 80027  | The internal Flash memory has been specified as the storage location for a log. This is not permissible. No values will be logged for this log and the log will not be created.   | Configure "Storage Card" or a network path as the storage location.  |
| 80028  | The event serves as a status acknowledgment that initialization of the logs is currently running. No values are logged until system alarm 80026 is issued.  | -  |

| Number | Effect/cause  | Remedy  |
|--------|---|---|
| 80029  | The number of logs specified in the event could not be initialized. Initialization of the logs has been completed.<br>The faulty logs are not available for logging jobs.   | Evaluate the additional system alarms generated for this alarm.<br>Check the configuration, the ODBC (Open Database Connectivity) and the specified drive.                      |
| 80030  | The structure of existing log does not match the expected log structure.<br>The logging process is stopped for this log.  | Delete the existing log data manually in advance.   |
| 80031  | The log in CSV format is corrupted.<br>The log cannot be used.  | Delete the corrupt file.  |
| 80032  | Logs can be configured with events. These are triggered as soon as the log is full. If WinCC flexible Runtime is started and the log is already full, the event will not be triggered.<br>The log specified no longer logs data because it is full.           | Stop the WinCC flexible Runtime, delete the log and restart the WinCC flexible Runtime.<br>or:<br>Configure a button which contains the same actions as the event and press it. |
| 80033  | "System Defined" is selected in the data log as the data source name. This results in an error. No logging is made to the database log whereas the logging to the CSV logs works.   | Install MSDE again.   |
| 80034  | An error has occurred in the initialization of the logs. An attempt has been made to create tables as a backup. This did not work. A backup has been made of the tables of the corrupt log and the log has been newly started (empty).                        | No action is necessary. However, it is recommended to save the backups or delete them to free up memory.  |
| 80035  | An error has occurred in the initialization of the logs. An attempt has been made to create backups of the tables and this has failed. No logging or backup has been performed.   | It is recommended to save the backups or delete them to free up memory.   |
| 110000 | The operating mode has been changed. The operating mode is now 'offline'.   | -   |
| 110001 | The operating mode has been changed. The operating mode is now "online".  | -   |
| 110002 | The operating mode cannot be changed.   | Check the connection to the PLCs.<br>Check whether the address area for the area pointer 88 "Coordination" in the PLC is available.   |
| 110003 | The operating mode of the specified controller has been changed by the system function "SetConnectionMode".<br>The operating mode is now "offline".   | -   |
| 110004 | The operating mode of the specified controller has been changed by the system function "SetConnectionMode".<br>The operating mode is now "online".  | -   |
| 110005 | An attempt was made to use the system function SetConnectionMode to switch the specified PLC to the online operating mode although the entire system is in the offline mode. This switchover is not permissible. The PLC remains in operating mode "offline". | Switch the complete system to operating mode "online" and execute the system function again.  |
| 110006 | The content of the area pointer "User version" does not match the user version configured WinCC flexible. WinCC flexible Runtime is therefore   | Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The user version entered on the controller</li> </ul>   |

| Number | Effect/cause  | Remedy  |
|--------|---|---|
|        | closed.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The user version entered in WinCC flexible</li> </ul>  |
| 120000 | The trend is not displayed because an incorrect axis to the trend or incorrect trend has been configured.   | Change the configuration.   |
| 120001 | The trend is not displayed because an incorrect axis to the trend or incorrect trend has been configured.   | Change the configuration.   |
| 120002 | The trend is not displayed because the tag assigned tries to access an invalid PLC address.   | Check if the data area for the tag exists in the PLC, the configured address is correct and the value range for the tag is correct.   |
| 130000 | The action was not executed.  | Close the other programs.<br>Delete files no longer required from the hard disk.  |
| 130001 | The action was not executed.  | Delete files no longer required from the hard disk.   |
| 130002 | The action was not executed.  | Close the other programs.<br>Delete files no longer required from the hard disk.  |
| 130003 | No data medium is inserted. The process is stopped.   | For example, check if <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The correct data medium is being accessed</li> <li>The data medium is inserted</li> </ul>  |
| 130004 | The data medium is write-protected. The process is stopped.   | Check whether access has been made to the correct storage medium. Remove any write protection.  |
| 130005 | The file is write-protected. The process is stopped.  | Check whether access has been made to the correct file. Modify the file attributes, if necessary.   |
| 130006 | No access to file is possible. The process is stopped.  | For example, check if <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The correct file is being accessed</li> <li>The file exists</li> <li>Another action is preventing simultaneous access to the file</li> </ul> |
| 130007 | The network connection is interrupted. Data mailboxes cannot be saved or read over the network connection.  | Check the network connection and correct the reason for the disruption.   |
| 130008 | The storage card is not available. Data mailboxes cannot be saved or read to the storage card.  | Insert the storage card.  |
| 130009 | The specified directory is not on the storage card. The files that are saved in this directory are not saved when the HMI device is switched off.   | Insert the storage card.  |
| 130010 | The maximum nesting depth can be exhausted, for example, when a value change in a script results in the initiation of another script. The second script in turn has a value change resulting in the initiation of another script and so on. The configured functionality is not provided. | Check the configuration.  |
| 140000 | Online connection to the PLC has been successfully established.   | -   |
| 140001 | Online connection to the PLC has been disconnected.   | -   |
| 140003 | No tag updating or writing is executed.   | Check the connection and whether the PLC is switched on.<br>Check the parameter definitions in the Control Panel using "Set PU/PC interface".   |

| Number | Effect/cause  | Remedy   |
|--------|---|--|
|        |   | Restart the system.  |
| 140004 | No tag updating or writing is executed because the access point or the subrack configuration is incorrect.  | Verify the connection and check whether the PLC is switched on.<br>Check the access point or the subrack configuration (MPI, PPI, PROFIBUS) in the Control Panel with "Set PU/PC interface".<br>Restart the system.  |
| 140005 | No tag updating or writing is executed because the address of the HMI device is incorrect (possibly too high).  | Use a different HMI device address.<br>Verify the connection and check whether the PLC is switched on.<br>Check the parameter definitions in the Control Panel using "Set PU/PC interface".<br>Restart the system.   |
| 140006 | No tag updating or writing is executed because the baud rate is incorrect.  | Select a different baud rate in WinCC flexible (according to module, profile, communication peer, etc.).   |
| 140007 | Tags are not updated or written because the bus profile is incorrect (see %1).<br>The following parameters cannot be entered in the registry:<br>1: Tslot<br>2: Tqui<br>3: Tset<br>4: MinTsdr<br>5: MaxTsdr<br>6: Trdy<br>7: Tid1<br>8: Tid2<br>9: Gap Factor<br>10: Retry Limit  | Check the user-defined bus profile.<br>Check the connection and whether the PLC is switched on.<br>Check the parameter definitions in the Control Panel using "Set PU/PC interface".<br>Restart the system.  |
| 140008 | No tag updating or writing is executed because baud rate is incorrect. The following parameters cannot be entered in the registry:<br>0: General error<br>1: Incorrect version<br>2: Profile cannot be entered in the registry.<br>3: Subnet type cannot be entered in the registry.<br>4: Target rotation time cannot be entered in the registry.<br>5: Highest address (HSA) incorrect. | Check the connection and whether the PLC is switched on.<br>Check the parameter definitions in the Control Panel using "Set PU/PC interface".<br>Restart the system.   |
| 140009 | No tag updating or writing is executed because the module for the S7 communication was not found.   | Reinstall the module in the Control Panel using "Set PU/PC interface".   |
| 140010 | No S7 communication peer could be found because the PLC is switched off.<br>DP/T:<br>The option "Is not active as the only master" is set in the Control Panel under "Set PU/PC interface"..  | Switch the PLC on.<br>DP/T:<br>If only one master is connected to the network, deactivate the option "Is not active as the only master" in "Set PU/PC interface".<br>If there is more than one master connected to the network, activate them. Do not change any settings otherwise the bus will be disrupted. |
| 140011 | No tag updating or writing is executed because the communication is interrupted.  | Check the connection and that the communication peer is switched on.   |
| 140012 | There is an initialization problem (e.g. when WinCC flexible Runtime has been terminated in the Task  | Restart the HMI device.<br>or:   |

| Number | Effect/cause   | Remedy   |
|--------|--|--|
|        | Manager).<br>or:<br>Another application (e.g. STEP7) is active with different bus parameters and the driver cannot be started with the new bus parameters (e.g. baud rate).  | Start WinCC flexible Runtime first and then the other applications.  |
| 140013 | The MPI cable is not plugged in; there is no power supply.   | Check the connections.   |
| 140014 | "Configured bus address already assigned."   | Modify the HMI device address in the configuration in PLC.   |
| 140015 | Incorrect baud rate<br>or:<br>Incorrect bus parameter (e.g. HSA)<br>or:<br>OP address > HSA or: incorrect interrupt vector (interrupt does not arrive at the driver)   | Correct the incorrect parameters.  |
| 140016 | Configured interrupt is not supported by the hardware.   | Change the interrupt number.   |
| 140017 | Configured interrupt in use by another driver.   | Change the interrupt number.   |
| 140018 | The consistency check was deactivated by SIMOTION Scout. Only one appropriate note appears.  | Activate the consistency check with SIMOTION Scout again and reload the configuration in the project.  |
| 140019 | SIMOTION Scout loads a new project to the PLC. Connection to the PLC is interrupted.   | Wait until the end of the reconfiguration.   |
| 140020 | The version in the PLC and that in the configuration (FWX file) do not match. Connection to the PLC is interrupted.  | The following remedies are available:<br>Load the current version in the PLC using SIMOTION Scout.<br>Regenerate the project using WinCC flexible ES, close WinCC flexible Runtime and restart with a new configuration. |
| 150000 | No additional data is read or written. Possible causes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The cable is defective.</li> <li>• The PLC does not respond, is defective, etc.</li> <li>• The connection is established via the wrong interface.</li> <li>• The system is overloaded.</li> </ul>   | Check that the cable is plugged in, the PLC is operational and the correct interface is used.<br>Reboot the system if the system alarm is displayed continuously.  |
| 150001 | Connection is reestablished because the cause of the interruption has been eliminated.   | -  |
| 160000 | No additional data is read or written. Possible causes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The cable is defective.</li> <li>• The PLC does not respond, is defective, etc.</li> <li>• Connection has been established via the wrong interface.</li> <li>• The system is overloaded.</li> </ul> | Check that the cable is plugged in, the PLC is operational and the correct interface is used.<br>Reboot the system if the system alarm is displayed continuously.  |
| 160001 | Connection is reestablished because the cause of the interruption has been eliminated.   | -  |
| 160010 | There is no connection to the server because the server identification (CLS-ID) cannot be  | Check the access rights.   |

| Number | Effect/cause  | Remedy   |
|--------|---|--|
|        | established.<br>Values cannot be read or written.   |  |
| 160011 | There is no connection to the server because the server identification (CLS-ID) cannot be established.<br>Values cannot be read or written.   | For example, check if <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The server name is correct</li> <li>• The computer name is correct</li> <li>• The server is registered</li> </ul>   |
| 160012 | There is no connection to the server because the server identification (CLS-ID) cannot be established.<br>Values cannot be read or written.   | For example, check if <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The server name is correct</li> <li>• The computer name is correct</li> <li>• The server is registered</li> </ul> Note for experienced users:<br>Interpret the value from HRESULT.  |
| 160013 | The specified server was started as InProc Server. This has not been released and may possibly lead to incorrect behavior because the server is running in the same process area as the WinCC flexible Runtime software.                            | Configure the server as OutProc Server or Local Server.  |
| 160014 | Only one OPC server project can be started on a PC/MP. An error message appears when an attempt is made to start a second project. The second project has no OPC server functionality and cannot be located as an OPC server from external sources. | Do not start a second project with OPC server functionality on the computer.   |
| 170000 | S7 diagnostic alarms are not displayed because it is not possible to log on to the S7 diagnostics with this unit. The service program is not supported.   | -  |
| 170001 | The S7 diagnostics buffer cannot be displayed because communication with the PLC has been switched off.   | Switch the PLC online.   |
| 170002 | The S7 diagnostics buffer cannot be displayed because reading in the diagnostics buffer (SZL) was terminated due to an error.   | -  |
| 170003 | The display of an S7 diagnostic alarm is not possible. An internal error %2 has been reported.  | -  |
| 170004 | The display of an S7 diagnostic alarm is not possible. An internal error with error class %2 and error number %3 has been reported.   | -  |
| 170007 | It is not possible to read in the S7 diagnostics buffer (SZL) because it was terminated with an internal error class %2 and error code %3.  | -  |
| 180000 | A component/OCX receives configuration data with a version identification which is not supported.   | Install a newer component.   |
| 180001 | The system is overloaded because too many actions have been activated simultaneously. Not all the actions can be executed; some are rejected.   | Several remedies are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Increase the configured cycle times or basic clock.</li> <li>• Generate the alarms slower (polling).</li> <li>• Trigger the scripts and functions at greater intervals.</li> </ul> If the alarm appears more frequently:<br>Restart the HMI device. |
| 180002 | The screen keyboard could not be activated.<br>Possible cause:  | Reinstall WinCC flexible runtime.  |

| Number | Effect/cause  | Remedy   |
|--------|---|--|
|        | The file "TouchInputPC.exe" was not registered due to an incorrectly executed Setup.  |  |
| 190000 | It is possible that the tag will not be updated.  | -  |
| 190001 | The tag is updated following an error status after the cause of the last error state has been eliminated (return to normal operation).  | -  |
| 190002 | The tag is not updated because communication to the PLC has been interrupted.   | Switch on communication via the system function "SetOnline".   |
| 190004 | The tag is not updated because the configured address is not available for this tag.  | Check the configuration.   |
| 190005 | The tag is not updated because the configured PLC type does not exist for this tag.   | Check the configuration.   |
| 190006 | The tag is not updated because it is not possible to map the PLC type in the data type for the tag.   | Check the configuration.   |
| 190007 | The tag values are not modified because the connection to the PLC has been interrupted or the tag is offline.   | Switch to online mode or reestablish connection to the PLC.  |
| 190008 | The threshold values configured for the tag have been violated possibly due to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• an entered value</li> <li>• a system function</li> <li>• a script</li> </ul>   | Observe the configured or current threshold value of the tag.  |
| 190009 | An attempt has been made to assign a value to a tag which is outside the value range permitted for this data type.<br>E.g., a value of 260 entered for a byte tag or a value of -3 for a word tag without a sign.   | Observe the value range for the data type of the tags.   |
| 190010 | Too many values are being used to describe a tag (i.e. in a loop triggered by a script).<br>Values are lost because the maximum of 100 actions have been stored in the buffer.  | Increase the time interval between the multi-writing tasks.  |
| 190011 | Possible cause 1:<br>The value entered could not be written to the configured PLC tag because it was either above or below the value range.<br>The input is rejected and the original value is reset.<br>Possible cause 2:<br>The connection to the PLC has been interrupted. | Ensure that the value entered is within the value range of the PLC tags.<br><br>Check the connection to the PLC. |
| 190012 | It is not possible to convert a value from a source format to a target format. For example:<br>A value should be assigned to a counter which is outside the valid, PLC-dependent value range.<br>A tag of the type Integer should be assigned a value of the type String.     | Check the value range or the data type of the tags.  |
| 190100 | The area pointer is not updated because the configured address for this area pointer is not available.<br>Type<br>1 Warning alarms  | Check the configuration.   |

A.2 System alarms

| Number | Effect/cause   | Remedy   |
|--------|--|--|
|        | 2 Alarms<br>3 PLC acknowledgment<br>4 HMI device acknowledgment<br>5 LED mapping<br>6 Trend request<br>7 Trend transfer 1<br>8 Trend transfer 2<br>No.:<br>is the consecutive number displayed in WinCC flexible ES.             |  |
| 190101 | The area pointer is not updated because it is not possible to map the PLC type in the area pointer type.<br>Parameter type and no.: see alarm 190100   | -  |
| 190102 | The area pointer is updated following an error status after the cause of the last error state has been eliminated (return to normal operation).<br>Parameter type and no.: See alarm 190100.                                     | -  |
| 200000 | Coordination is not executed because the address configured in the PLC does not exist/has not been set up.   | Change the address or set up the address in the PLC.   |
| 200001 | Coordination is not executed because the address configured in the PLC does not exist/has not been written.  | Change the address or set up the address in the PLC in an area which can be written to.  |
| 200002 | Coordination is currently not being performed because the address format of the area pointer does not match the internal storage format.   | Internal error   |
| 200003 | Coordination can be executed again because the last error status has been eliminated (return to normal operation).   | -  |
| 200004 | The coordination may not be executed.  | -  |
| 200005 | No additional data is read or written. Possible causes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The cable is defective.</li> <li>• The PLC does not respond, is defective, etc.</li> <li>• The system is overloaded.</li> </ul> | Check that the cable is plugged in and the PLC is operational.<br>Reboot the system if the system alarm is displayed continuously. |
| 200100 | Coordination is not executed because the address configured in the PLC does not exist/has not been set up.   | Change the address or set up the address in the PLC.   |
| 200101 | Coordination is not executed because the address configured in the PLC does not exist/has not been written.  | Change the address or set up the address in the PLC in an area which can be written to.  |
| 200102 | Coordination is currently not being performed because the address format of the area pointer does not match the internal storage format.   | Internal error   |
| 200103 | Coordination can be executed again because the last error status has been eliminated (return to normal operation).   | -  |
| 200104 | The coordination may not be executed.  | -  |
| 200105 | No additional data is read or written. Possible  | Check that the cable is plugged in and the PLC is  |

| Number | Effect/cause   | Remedy  |
|--------|--|---|
|        | causes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The cable is defective.</li> <li>The PLC does not respond, is defective, etc.</li> <li>The system is overloaded.</li> </ul>   | operational.<br>Reboot the system if the system alarm is displayed continuously.  |
| 210000 | Jobs are not processed because the address configured in the PLC does not exist/has not been set up.   | Change the address or set up the address in the PLC.  |
| 210001 | Jobs are not processed because the address configured in the PLC cannot be written to/read from.   | Change the address or set up the address in the PLC in an area which can be written to/read from.   |
| 210002 | Commands are not executed because the address format of the area pointer does not match the internal storage format.   | Internal error  |
| 210003 | The job mailbox is processed again because the last error status has been eliminated (return to normal operation).   | -   |
| 210004 | It is possible that the job mailbox is not processed.  | -   |
| 210005 | A job mailbox with an illegal number was triggered.  | Check the PLC program.  |
| 210006 | An error occurred while attempting to execute the job mailbox. As a result, the job mailbox will not be executed. Observe the subsequent/previous system alarm, if appropriate.  | Check the parameters in the job mailbox. Recompile the configuration.   |
| 220001 | The tag is not downloaded because the associated communication driver / HMI device does not support downloading the data type bool/bit.  | Change the configuration.   |
| 220002 | The tag is not downloaded because the associated communication driver / HMI device does not support the data type byte when writing.   | Change the configuration.   |
| 220003 | The communication driver cannot be loaded. The driver may not be installed.  | Install the driver by reinstalling WinCC flexible Runtime.  |
| 220004 | Communication is terminated and no update is executed because the cable is not connected or is defective, etc.   | Check the connection.   |
| 220005 | Communication is running.  | -   |
| 220006 | The connection is established to the specified PLC at the specified interface.   | -   |
| 220007 | The connection to the specified PLC at the specified interface is disrupted.   | Check if <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The cable is plugged in</li> <li>The PLC is OK</li> <li>The correct interface is used</li> <li>The configuration is OK (interface parameters, protocol settings, controller address).</li> </ul> Reboot the system if the system alarm is displayed continuously. |
| 220008 | The communication driver cannot access the specified interface or open it. It is possible that another program is using this interface or an interface is being used which is not available on the target device.<br>There is no communication to the PLC. | Close all the programs which access the interface and restart the computer.<br>Use another interface available in the system.   |

| Number | Effect/cause  | Remedy   |
|--------|---|--|
| 230000 | The value entered could not be accepted. The entered value is rejected and the previous value is restored.<br>Either the value range has been exceeded or impermissible characters were entered.  | Enter a permissible value.   |
| 230002 | Since the user currently logged on does not have the proper authorization, the input is rejected and the previous value is restored.  | Log on as a user with sufficient rights.   |
| 230003 | Changeover to the specified screen is not executed because the screen is not available/configured. The current screen remains selected.   | Configure the screen and check the selection function.   |
| 230005 | The value range of the tag has been exceeded in the I/O field.<br>The original value of the tag is retained.  | Take the value range of the tag into consideration when entering value.  |
| 230100 | During navigation in the web browser, a message which may be of interest to the user is issued. The web browser continues to run, but may not (fully) display the new page.   | Navigate to another page.  |
| 230200 | The connection to the HTTP channel was interrupted due to an error. This error is explained by another system alarm.<br>Data is no longer exchanged.  | Check the network connection.<br>Check the configuration of the server.  |
| 230201 | The connection to HTTP channel has been reestablished.<br>Data is exchanged.  | -  |
| 230202 | WININET.DLL has detected an error. This error usually occurs when it is not possible to make a connection to the server or the server rejects the attempt to make a connection because the client lacks the authorization.<br>An unknown server certificate can also be the cause when the connection is encoded through SSL.<br>The text of the error message provides more information.<br>This text is always in the language of the Windows installation since it originates from Windows.<br>Process values are no longer exchanged. | Depending on the cause:<br>When a connection cannot be made or a timeout occurs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the network connection and the network.</li> <li>• Check the server address.</li> <li>• Check if the web server is actually running on the target computer.</li> </ul> In the absence of an authorization: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configured user name and/or password do not match those on the server. Match them.</li> </ul> When the server certificate is rejected:<br>Certificate signed by an unknown CA ( ): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Either set the configuration to ignore this point, or</li> <li>• Install a certificate that has been signed with a root certificate known to the client computer.</li> </ul> If the date of the certificate is invalid: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Either set the configuration to ignore this point, or</li> <li>• Install a certificate with a valid date on the server.</li> </ul> If there is an invalid CN (Common Name or Computer Name): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Either set the configuration to ignore this point, or</li> <li>• Install a certificate with a name that corresponds to that of the server address.</li> </ul> |
| 230203 | Although a connection can be made to the server, the HTTP server rejects the connection because <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• WinCC flexible Runtime is not running on the server.</li> </ul>  | For error 503 Service unavailable: Check if:<br>WinCC flexible Runtime is running on a server.<br>The HTTP channel is supported.   |

| Number | Effect/cause   | Remedy  |
|--------|--|---|
|        | <p>server, or</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The HTTP channel is not supported (503 Service unavailable).</li> </ul> <p>Other errors may occur if the web server does not support the HTTP channel. The language of the error text depends on the web server.<br/>Data is not exchanged.</p> |   |
| 230301 | An internal error has occurred. An English text explains the error somewhat more specific. One possible cause is insufficient memory, for example. OCX does not work.  | -   |
| 230302 | The name of the remote server cannot be determined.<br>No connection can be established.   | Check the configured server address.<br>Check if the DNS service of the network is activated.   |
| 230303 | The remote server is not running on the addressed computer.<br>The server address is incorrect.<br>No connection can be established.   | Check the configured server address.<br>Check if the remote server is running on the target computer.                                       |
| 230304 | The remote server on the addressed computer is incompatible to VNCOCX.<br>No connection can be established.  | Use a compatible remote server.   |
| 230305 | The authentication has failed because the password is incorrect.<br>No connection can be established.  | Configure the correct password.   |
| 230306 | The connection to the remote server has been interrupted. This may occur during network problems.<br>No connection can be established.   | Check if <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The cable is plugged in</li> <li>there are network problems.</li> </ul>                     |
| 230307 | The connection to the remote server was ended because <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The remote server was shut down, or</li> <li>The user instructed the server to close all connections.</li> </ul> The connection is closed.  | -   |
| 230308 | This notification informs you about the establishment of the connection.<br>A connection has just been established.  | -   |
| 240000 | WinCC flexible Runtime is operating in demo mode. You have no authorization or your authorization is corrupt.  | Load the authorization.   |
| 240001 | WinCC flexible Runtime is operating in demo mode. Too many tags are configured for the installed version.  | Load an adequate authorization / powerpack.   |
| 240002 | WinCC flexible Runtime is operating with a time-limited standby authorization.   | Restore the full authorization.   |
| 240003 | Authorization cannot be executed.<br>Without authorization, WinCC will run in demo mode.   | Restart WinCC flexible Runtime or reinstall it.   |
| 240004 | Error while reading the standby authorization. WinCC flexible Runtime is operating in demo mode.   | Restart WinCC flexible Runtime, install the authorization or repair the authorization (see Commissioning Instructions Software Protection). |

| Number | Effect/cause  | Remedy   |
|--------|---|--|
| 250000 | The tag in the specified line in "Status force" is not updated because the address configured for this tag is not available.  | Check the set address and then check that the address has been set up in the PLC.  |
| 250001 | The tag in the specified line in "Status force" is not updated because the PLC type configured for this tag is not available.   | Check the set address.   |
| 250002 | The tag in the specified line in "Status force" is not updated because it is not possible to map the PLC type in the tag type.  | Check the set address.   |
| 250003 | No connection could be established to the PLC. The tags will not be updated.  | Check the connection to the PLC. Check that the PLC is switched on and online.   |
| 260000 | An unknown user or an unknown password has been entered in the system. The current user is logged off the system.   | Log on to the system as a user with a valid password.  |
| 260001 | The logged on user does not have sufficient authorization to perform the protected functions on the system.   | Log on to the system as a user with sufficient authorization.  |
| 260002 | This notification is triggered by the system function "TrackUserChange".  | -  |
| 260003 | The user has logged off the system.   | -  |
| 260004 | The user name entered into the user display already exists in the user administration.  | Select another user name because user names have to be unique in the user administration.  |
| 260005 | The entry is rejected.  | Use a shorter user name.   |
| 260006 | The entry is rejected.  | Use a shorter or longer password.  |
| 260007 | The log-off time you entered is outside the valid range of 0 to 60 minutes. The entered value will be discarded and the original value is retained.   | Enter a value between 0 and 60 minutes for the logoff time.  |
| 260008 | An attempt was made to read a PTProRun.pwl file created with ProTool V 6.0 in WinCC flexible. Reading the file was interrupted due to incompatibility of the format.  | -  |
| 270000 | A tag is not displayed in the alarm because it attempts to access an invalid address in the PLC.  | Check if the data area for the tag in the controller exists, whether the configured address is correct and whether the value range for the tag is correct. |
| 270001 | There is a unit-dependent limit as to how many alarms may be queued simultaneously in order to be displayed (see GHB). This limit has been exceeded. The display no longer contains all the alarms. However, all the alarms are recorded in the alarm buffer. | -  |
| 270002 | Alarms are displayed from a log for which there is no data in the current project. Placeholders are issued for the alarms.  | Delete older log data, if necessary.   |
| 270003 | The service cannot be set up because too many devices want to set up this service. A maximum of four devices may execute this action.   | Connect fewer HMI devices which want to use the service.   |
| 280000 | Connection is reestablished because the cause of the interruption has been eliminated.  | -  |

| Number | Effect/cause   | Remedy   |
|--------|--|--|
| 280001 | No additional data is read or written. Possible causes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The cable is defective.</li> <li>The PLC does not respond, is defective, etc.</li> <li>Connection has been established via the wrong interface.</li> <li>The system is overloaded.</li> </ul> | Check if <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The cable is plugged in</li> <li>The PLC is OK</li> <li>The correct interface is used.</li> </ul> Reboot the system if the system alarm is displayed continuously.   |
| 280002 | A connection is used which requires a function module in the PLC.<br>The function block has replied. Communication can now proceed.  | -  |
| 280003 | A connection is used which requires a function module in the PLC.<br>The function block has not replied.   | Check if: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The cable is plugged in</li> <li>The PLC is OK</li> <li>The correct interface is used.</li> </ul> Reboot the system if the system alarm is displayed continuously.<br>The remedy depends on the error code: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The function block must set the COM bit in the response container.</li> <li>The function block must not set the ERROR bit in the response container.</li> <li>The function block must respond within the specified time (timeout).</li> <li>Establish an online connection to the controller.</li> </ol> |
| 280004 | Connection to the PLC is interrupted. There is no data exchange at present.  | Check the connection parameters in WinCC flexible.<br>Check that the cable is plugged in, the PLC is operational and the correct interface is used.<br>Reboot the system if the system alarm is displayed continuously.  |
| 290000 | The recipe tag could not be read or written to. It is assigned the start value.<br>The alarm can be entered in the alarm buffer for up to four more failed tags, if necessary. After that, the alarm number 290003 is issued.  | Check in the configuration that the address has been set up in the PLC.  |
| 290001 | An attempt has been made to assign a value to a recipe tag which is outside the value range permitted for this type.<br>The alarm can be entered in the alarm buffer for up to four more failed tags, if necessary. After that, the alarm number 290004 is issued.                           | Observe the value range for the tag type.  |
| 290002 | It is not possible to convert a value from a source format to a target format.<br>The alarm can be entered in the alarm buffer for up to four more failed recipe tags, if necessary. After that, the alarm number 290005 is issued.  | Check the value range or type of the tag.  |
| 290003 | This alarm is issued when alarm number 290000 is triggered more than five times.<br>In this case, no further individual alarms are generated.  | Check in the configuration that the tag addresses have been set up in the PLC.   |
| 290004 | This alarm is issued when alarm number 290001 is triggered more than five times.   | Observe the value range for the tag type.  |

| Number | Effect/cause   | Remedy  |
|--------|--|---|
|        | In this case, no further individual alarms are generated.  |   |
| 290005 | This alarm is issued when alarm number 290002 is triggered more than five times.<br>In this case, no further individual alarms are generated.  | Check the value range or type of the tag.   |
| 290006 | The threshold values configured for the tag have been violated by values entered.  | Observe the configured or current threshold value of the tag.   |
| 290007 | There is a difference between the source and target structure of the recipe currently being processed. The target structure contains an additional data recipe tag which is not available in the source structure.<br>The data recipe tag specified is assigned its start value. | Insert the specified data recipe tag in the source structure.   |
| 290008 | There is a difference between the source and target structure of the recipe currently being processed. The source structure contains an additional data recipe tag which is not available in the target structure and therefore cannot be assigned. The value is rejected.       | Remove the specified data recipe tag in the specified recipe from the project.  |
| 290010 | The storage location configured for the recipe is not permitted.<br>Possible causes:<br>Impermissible characters, write protected, data medium full or does not exist.   | Check the configured storage location.  |
| 290011 | The data mailbox with the specified number does not exist.   | Check the source for the number (constant or tag value).  |
| 290012 | The recipe with the specified number does not exist.   | Check the source for the number (constant or tag value).  |
| 290013 | An attempt was made to save a data mailbox under a data mailbox number which already exists. The action is not executed.   | The following remedies are available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the source for the number (constant or tag value).</li> <li>• First, delete the data mailbox.</li> <li>• Change the "Overwrite" function parameter.</li> </ul>                 |
| 290014 | The file specified to be imported could not be found.  | Check the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the file name.</li> <li>• Ensure that the file is in the specified directory.</li> </ul>  |
| 290020 | Acknowledgment that downloading of data mailboxes from HMI device to controller has started.   | -   |
| 290021 | Acknowledgment that downloading of data mailboxes from HMI device to controller was completed without errors.  | -   |
| 290022 | Acknowledgment that downloading of data mailboxes from HMI device to controller was aborted due to an error.   | Check the configuration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Are the tag addresses configured in the PLC?</li> <li>• Does the recipe number exist?</li> <li>• Does the data record number exist?</li> <li>• The "Overwrite" function parameter set?</li> </ul> |
| 290023 | Acknowledgment that downloading of data  | -   |

| Number | Effect/cause  | Remedy   |
|--------|---|--|
|        | mailboxes from the controller to the HMI device has started.  |  |
| 290024 | Acknowledgment that downloading data mailboxes from the controller to the HMI device was completed without errors.  | -  |
| 290025 | Acknowledgment that downloading of data mailboxes from the controller to the HMI device was aborted due to an error.  | Check the configuration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Are the tag addresses configured in the PLC?</li> <li>• Does the recipe number exist?</li> <li>• Does the data record number exist?</li> <li>• The "Overwrite" function parameter set?</li> </ul>                        |
| 290026 | An attempt has been made to read/write a data mailbox although the data mailbox is not free at present.<br>This error may occur in the case of recipes for which downloading with synchronization has been configured.  | Set the data mailbox status to zero.   |
| 290027 | No connection to the PLC can be established at present. As a result, the data mailbox can neither be read nor written to.<br>Possible causes:<br>No physical connection to the controller (no cable plugged in, cable is defect) or the controller is switched off. | Check the connection to the PLC.   |
| 290030 | This alarm is issued after reselecting a screen that contains a recipe display in which a data mailbox is already selected.   | Reload the data mailbox from the storage location or retain the current values.  |
| 290031 | While saving, it was detected that a data mailbox with the specified number already exists.   | Overwrite the data mailbox or cancel the action.   |
| 290032 | While exporting data mailboxes, it was detected that a file with the specified name already exists.   | Overwrite the file or cancel the process.  |
| 290033 | Confirmation request before deleting data mailboxes.  | -  |
| 290040 | A data mailbox error with error code %1 that cannot be described in more detail occurred.<br>The action is canceled.<br>It is possible that the data mailbox was not installed correctly on the controller.   | Check the storage location, the data mailbox, the "Data mailbox" area pointer and, if necessary, the connection to the controller.<br>Wait a short period of time and then trigger the action again.<br>If the error persists, contact Customer Support. Provide them with the error code. |
| 290041 | A data mailbox or file cannot be saved because the storage location is full.  | Delete files no longer required.   |
| 290042 | An attempt was made to execute several recipe actions simultaneously. The last action was not executed.   | Wait a short period of time and then trigger the action again.   |
| 290043 | Confirmation request before storing data mailboxes.   | -  |
| 290044 | The data store for the recipe has been destroyed and will be deleted.   | -  |
| 290050 | Acknowledgment that the export of data mailboxes has started.   | -  |
| 290051 | Acknowledgment that the export of data mailboxes  | -  |

| Number | Effect/cause  | Remedy  |
|--------|---|---|
|        | was completed successfully.   |   |
| 290052 | Acknowledgment that the export of data mailboxes was aborted due to errors.   | Ensure that the structure of the data mailboxes at the storage location and the current recipe structure on the HMI device are identical. |
| 290053 | Acknowledgment that the import of data mailboxes has started.   | -   |
| 290054 | Acknowledgment that the import of data mailboxes was completed successfully.  | -   |
| 290055 | Acknowledgment that the import of data mailboxes was aborted due to errors.   | Ensure that the structure of the data mailboxes at the storage location and the current recipe structure on the HMI device are identical. |
| 290056 | The value in the specified line/column could not be read/written without errors.<br>The action was canceled.  | Check the specified line/column.  |
| 290057 | The tags of the specified recipe were switched from operating mode "offline" to "online".<br>Each modification of a tag in this recipe is now immediately transferred to the PLC.   | -   |
| 290058 | The tags of the specified recipe were switched from operating mode "online" to "offline".<br>Modifications to tags in this recipe are no longer immediately transferred to the PLC but must be transferred there specifically if necessary by downloading a data mailbox. | -   |
| 290059 | Acknowledgment that the specified data mailbox was stored successfully.   | -   |
| 290060 | Acknowledgment that the data mailbox memory was cleared successfully.   | -   |
| 290061 | Acknowledgment that clearing the data mailbox memory was aborted due to errors.   | -   |
| 290062 | The data mailbox number is above the maximum of 65536.<br>This data mailbox cannot be created.  | Select another number.  |
| 290063 | This occurs with the system function "ExportDataRecords" when the parameter "Overwrite" is set to No.<br>An attempt has been made to save a recipe with a file name that already exists.<br>The export is canceled.   | Check the system function "ExportDataRecords".  |
| 290068 | Request to confirm whether all data mailboxes in the recipe should be deleted.  | -   |
| 290069 | Request to confirm whether all data mailboxes of all recipes should really be deleted.  | -   |
| 290070 | The data mailbox specified is not in the import file.   | Check the source of the data mailbox number or data mailbox name (constant or tag value).   |
| 290071 | During the editing of data mailbox values, a value was entered that was below the lower limit of the recipe tag.<br>The entry is rejected.  | Enter a value within the limits of the recipe tag.  |
| 290072 | During the editing of data mailbox values, a value was entered that was above the upper limit of the  | Enter a value within the limits of the recipe tag.  |

| Number | Effect/cause  | Remedy   |
|--------|---|--|
|        | recipe tag.<br>The entry is rejected.   |  |
| 290073 | An action (e.g. saving a data mailbox) was not possible due to an unknown reason.<br>The error corresponds to the status alarm IDS_OUT_CMD_EXE_ERR in the large recipe view.  | -  |
| 290074 | While saving, it was detected that a data mailbox with the specified number already exists but under another name.  | Overwrite the data mailbox, change the data mailbox number, or cancel the action.                            |
| 290075 | A data record with this name already exists.<br>Saving the data record is stopped.  | Select a different data record name.   |
| 300000 | Process monitoring (e.g. using PDiag or S7-Graph) has been incorrectly programmed. More alarms are queued than allowed by the specifications of the CPU. No further ALARM_S alarms can be managed by the PLC and reported to HMI devices. | Change the PLC configuration.  |
| 300001 | Logon cannot be performed for ALARM_S on this PLC.  | Select a PLC that supports the ALARM_S service.  |
| 310000 | An attempt is being made to print too many reports simultaneously.<br>Since only one report can be printed at a time, the print job is rejected.  | Wait until the printout of the previous active report has finished.<br>Repeat the print job if necessary.    |
| 310001 | An error occurred on triggering the printer. The report is either not printed or printed with errors.   | Evaluate the additional system alarms generated for this alarm.<br>Repeat the print job if necessary.        |
| 320000 | The movements have already been indicated by another device.<br>The movements can no longer be controlled.  | Select the movements on the other display units and select the movement screen on the required display unit. |
| 320001 | The network is too complex.<br>The defective operands cannot be displayed.  | Display the network in STL.  |
| 320002 | No diagnostics-capable alarm have been selected.<br>The units related to the alarm could not be selected.   | Select a diagnostics-capable alarm in the screen ZP_ALARM.   |
| 320003 | No alarms exist in respect to the selected unit. No network can be displayed in the detail display.   | Select the defective unit in the general view screen.  |
| 320004 | The required signal statuses could not be read by the PLC. The defective operands cannot be determined.   | Check the consistency between the configuration on the display unit and the PLC program loaded.              |
| 320005 | The project contains ProAgent partitions which are not installed. No ProAgent diagnostics can be performed.   | In order to run the project, install the ProAgent option packet.   |
| 320006 | You have attempted to execute a function that is not possible with the current configuration.   | Check the type of the selected unit.   |
| 320007 | No operands causing a fault have been found in the networks.<br>ProAgent cannot display any blocked operands.   | Switch the Detail Screen to STL display mode and check the status of the operands and exclusion operands.    |
| 320008 | The diagnostic data saved in the configuration is not synchronized with that in the PLC.<br>ProAgent can only display the diagnostic units.   | Recompile the project and download it to the HMI device again.   |
| 320009 | The diagnostic data saved in the configuration is   | Recompile the project and download it to the HMI device  |

| Number | Effect/cause  | Remedy   |
|--------|---|--|
|        | not fully synchronized with that in the PLC. The diagnostic screens can be operated normally. ProAgent may be unable to display all diagnostic texts. | again.   |
| 320010 | The diagnostic texts saved in the configuration are not synchronized with that in the STEP7. The ProAgent diagnostics data is not up-to-date.         | Recompile the project and download it to the HMI device again.   |
| 320011 | There is no unit with the referenced DB number and FB number. The function cannot be executed.  | Check the parameters of function "SelectUnit" and the units selected in the project.   |
| 320012 | The "Step sequence mode" dialog box is no longer supported.   | Use Step Sequence Screen ZP_STEP from the appropriate standard project for your project. Instead of calling function Overview_Step_Sequence_Mode, call the function "FixedScreenSelection" using ZP_STEP as the screen name. |
| 320014 | The selected PLC cannot be evaluated for ProAgent. The alarm view configured with the system function "EvaluateAlarmDisplayFault" could not be found. | Check the parameters of the system function "EvaluateAlarmDisplayFault".   |

## Abbreviations

|      |   |
|------|---|
| CPU  | Central Processing Unit                       |
| CSV  | Comma Separated Values                        |
| CTS  | Clear To Send                                 |
| DC   | Direct Current                                |
| DCD  | Data Carrier Detect                           |
| DIL  | Dual-in-Line (electronic chip housing design) |
| DP   | Decentralized Periphery                       |
| DSN  | Data Source Name                              |
| DSR  | Data Set Ready                                |
| DTR  | Data Terminal Ready                           |
| ESD  | Electrostatically Sensitive Devices           |
| EMC  | Electromagnetic Compatibility                 |
| EN   | European Norm                                 |
| ES   | Engineering System                            |
| ESD  | Electrostatic Sensitive Device                |
| GND  | Ground  |
| RF   | High Frequency                                |
| HMI  | Human Machine Interface                       |
| IEC  | International Electronic Commission           |
| IF   | Interface                                     |
| LED  | Light Emitting Diode                          |
| MMC  | Multi Media Card                              |
| MOS  | Metal Oxide Semiconductor                     |
| MPI  | Multipoint Interface (SIMATIC S7)             |
| MS   | Microsoft                                     |
| MTBF | Mean Time Between Failures                    |
| N.C. | Not connected                                 |
| OP   | Operator Panel                                |
| PC   | Personal Computer                             |
| PG   | Programming Unit                              |
| PPI  | Point to Point Interface (SIMATIC S7)         |
| RAM  | Random Access Memory                          |
| RTS  | Request To Send                               |
| RxD  | Receive Data                                  |
| SELV | Safety Extra Low Voltage                      |
| SP   | Service Pack                                  |
| PLC  | Programmable Logic Controller                 |

|        |   |
|--------|---|
| STN    | Super Twisted Nematic                           |
| Sub-D  | Subminiature D (plug connector)                 |
| TAB    | Tabulator                                       |
| TCP/IP | Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol |
| TFT    | Thin Film Transistor                            |
| TxD    | Transmit Data                                   |
| UL     | Underwriter's Laboratory                        |



## Glossary

### Display duration

Defines whether and how long a system alarm is displayed on the HMI device.

### AG

A PLC in the SIMATIC S5 series, e.g. the AG S5-115U

### AS

A PLC in the SIMATIC S7 series, the SIMATIC S7-300 for example

### AS 511

The protocol of the programming unit interface to the PLC SIMATIC S5

### Operating element

Is a component part of a project to enter values and trigger functions. A button, for example, is an operating element.

### Screen

A screen displays all the logically related process data on the HMI device. The display of the process data can be supported by graphic objects.

### Screen object

Is a configured object for displaying or operating the system being monitored, e.g. a rectangle, an I/O field or Recipe View.

### Bootloader

Used to start up the operating systems and is automatically started when the HMI device is switched on. A start graphic is displayed during startup. Once the operating system is loaded, the loader or the Control Panel is displayed, depending on the HMI device.

### Booting

Also refer to Starting

**I/O field**

The I/O field enables values to be entered or output on the HMI device which are then transferred to the PLC.

**Event**

Functions are triggered by the arrival of defined events. Events can be configured. Events which can be configured for a button include 'press button' and 'release button'.

**Field**

An area reserved in configured screens for entering input and output values.

**Flash memory**

Is a memory with non-volatile memory chips which is used as a mobile storage medium in the form of a memory card or installed permanently on the main board. The mobile storage medium market is determined by Flash memories; Compact Flash and Smart Media are predominant.

Compact Flash and Smart Media differ in their basic, inner design. In the case of CF cards, the control electronics is in the card whereby, with SM cards, the control electronics is installed in the associated device.

**Function**

A function is linked to an icon in the Control Panel or an operating element in the project.

**Softkey**

Is a key on the HMI device which can be configured as required. A function is assigned to the key during the configuration. The assignment of the function keys may be dependent on the screen being displayed or independent of the screen displayed.

**Half brightness life**

Time period after which the brightness of the lighting tube only achieves 50% of its original value, for example. The specified value depends on the operating temperature.

**Hardcopy**

Represents a printout of the current screen content on a connected printer.

**Help text**

Configurable information on objects in a project. The help text for an alarm can, for example, contain information on the cause of the fault and methods of elimination.

## Image

A file which can be transferred from the configuration computer to the HMI device. The Image contains the operating system for the HMI device and parts of WinCC flexible runtime required to run a project.

## Alarm logging

Is the printout of user-defined alarms parallel to output on the HMI device screen.

## Alarm, user-defined

A user defined alarm can be assigned to one of the following alarm classes:

- Error
- Operation
- User-defined alarm classes

A user-defined alarm makes reference to a certain operating status of the system being monitors which is connected to the HMI device via the PLC.

## Alarm, departing

Moment at which the triggering of an alarm by the PLC is reset.

## Alarm, arriving

Moment at which an alarm is triggered by the PLC or HMI device.

## Alarm, acknowledging

Acknowledgement of an alarm confirms that it has been noted.

## Conventions

A system of characters, symbols and rules governing language syntax; in data processing they define the syntax of the programming language.

## Object

Is a component part of a project, e.g. a screen or alarm. Objects serve to display or enter texts and values on the HMI device.

## Project

The result of a configuration using a configuration software. The project contains system-specific objects, basic settings and alarms in the form of screens. The project is saved in the project file with the file name extension \*.hmi if it has been configured with WinCC flexible.

It is necessary to distinguish between the project on the configuration computer and that on an HMI device. A project on the configuration computer can be available in several

languages than can be managed on the HMI device. The project on the configuration computer can be set up for different HMI devices. Only the project set up for a particular HMI device can be transferred to that HMI device.

### **Project file**

Is the compiled file which is created after the configuration from a source file for a specific HMI device. The project file is transferred to the associated HMI device and serves for operating and monitoring the system to be monitored. Refer to Source file.

### **Configuration computer**

The general term for programming units and PCs on which projects are created, using a configuration software, for use monitoring a system.

### **Configuration software**

Is a software to create projects which serves for process visualization – also refer to project, process visualization and runtime software.

### **Process visualization**

Is the representation of processes from the areas of production, logistics and services using texts and graphics. Configured elements enable the data to be read from and written to processes running on systems being monitored and, thus, to actively intervene in them.

### **Source file**

Is the file from which various project files can be created, depending on the configuration. The source file is not transferred and remains on the configuration computer.

The file extension of a source file is \*.hmi. Refer to Source file, compressed and Project file.

### **Source file, compressed**

Is the compressed form of the source file. It can be transferred, in addition to the project file, to the associated HMI device. "Enable BackTransfer" must be activated in the project on the configuration computer. The file extension of a compressed source file is \*.pdz. The standard memory location for a compressed source file is the external memory card. Refer to Source file.

To restore a source file, it is necessary to use the same WinCC flexible version which was used to configure the project.

### **Remote on/off**

Is an option in the "Loader" menu which enables and disables remote control of the HMI device from the PLC.

**Recipe**

A combination of tags to a fixed data structure. The data structure configured can be assigned data on the HMI device and is then referred to as a data record. The use of recipes ensures that when a data record is downloaded, all the assigned data is transferred to the PLC at the same time.

**Runtime**

Instantiation for a project on an HMI device. Refer to project file.

**Runtime software**

Is a software for process visualization with which a project on a configuration computer can be tested – also refer to project and configuration software.

**Acknowledge**

Acknowledgement of an alarm confirms that it has been noted.

**STEP 7**

Programming software for SIMATIC S7, SIMATIC C7 and SIMATIC WinAC.

**Start**

A project can be called in by means of a button in the Loader. This procedure is referred to as "starting".

**PLC**

Is a general term for devices and systems with which the HMI device communicates, e.g. SIMATIC S7.

**Job mailbox**

This triggers a function via the PLC.

**Fault time**

This relates to the time interval between the arrival and departure of an alarm.

**Symbolic I/O field**

Is a field for the input/output of a parameter. I.e. it contains a list of predefined entries from which one can be selected.

### System, to be monitored

A general term for machines, processing centers, systems and plants as well as processes which are to be operated and observed by an HMI device.

### System alarms

Assigned to the "System" alarm class. A system alarm makes reference to internal states in the HMI device and the PLC.

### Tab order

Is defined during the configuration to set the sequence in which objects are focused on pressing the <TAB> key.

### Transfer

The transfer of a run-capable project to the HMI device.

### Transfer mode

Is an operating mode on the HMI device used for transferring a run-capable project from the configuration computer to the HMI device. Refer to Transfer mode.

### Transfer mode

Activates transfer mode. Setting the HMI device to transfer mode is a condition for transferring data from the configuration computer to the HMI device and vice versa. A logical connection via the data line does not exist. Refer to Transfer mode.

### Bootstrapping

An option for updating the operating system. When a functional operating system is available, updating can be carried out without booting. Otherwise, updating with booting is necessary. In this case, the configuration computer communicates with the HMI device via the bootloader.

### Tag

Is a defined memory location in which values can be written to and read from. This can be done from the PLC or via the HMI device. Depending on whether the tags have a connection to the PLC or not determines the difference between "external" tags (process tags) and "internal" tags.

# Index

## A

### ACK

Key, 9-8

### Acknowledge

Key, 9-8

### acknowledgement

Acoustic, 1-5, 6-17, 9-3, 12-6

visual, 9-3

with touch control, 9-3

### Acknowledgement groups, 1-6

### Acoustic acknowledgement, 1-5, 6-17, 9-3, 12-6

### Additional applications, 6-15

Memory requirements, 6-15

### Air discharge, 12-7

### Alarm acquisition, 1-6

### Alarm buffer, 1-6

in Runtime, 8-2

### Alarm events, 1-6

### Alarm indicator

Behavior, 9-22

in Runtime, 8-3

Purpose, 9-22

### Alarm log

in Runtime, 8-2

Scope of alarm logging, 8-4

### Alarm logging, 1-6

### Alarm protocol, 8-2, 8-8

### Alarm view

in Runtime, 8-2

Layout, 9-23

Operator controls, 9-24

Purpose, 9-23

### Alarm window

in Runtime, 8-3

### ALARM\_S, 1-6

### Alarms

Functional scope, 1-5

in Runtime, 8-2

### Alignment

Printer, 6-11

### Alphanumeric key assignment, 9-8

### Alphanumeric keys, 5-6

### Alphanumeric screen keyboard, 9-5

### ALT

Key, 9-9

### Alt layer

Screen keyboard, 9-6

### Ambient conditions, 12-7

### Angle of inclination, 3-4, 12-7

### application

In industrial sector, 2-1

In residential areas, 2-2

### Approvals, A-1, A-2

### Area

Printer, 6-11

### Area of use, 1-2

### ASCII character set

Printer, 4-8

### Authorization, iv

Back transfer, 7-21

in Runtime, 8-7

Transfer, 7-21

## B

### Back transfer, 7-10

Execute, 7-11

Requirements, 7-11

### Back-lighting

Screen, 1-5, 12-5

Switch off, 6-14

### Backspace

Key, 9-8

### Backup, 7-15, 12-6

### Backup battery, 1-9, 4-4, 12-6

Changing, 11-2

### Bar

Layout, 9-34

Operation, 9-34

Purpose, 9-34

### Barometric pressure, 12-7

### Battery, 1-9, 12-6

Changing, 11-2

### Battery connection, 4-4

### Baud rate

Printer, 6-11

Transfer mode, 7-5

Behavior

- Alarm indicator, 9-22
- I/O field, 9-16
- Icon, 9-54
- Recipe view with screen change, 9-28
- Simple recipe view, 9-32
- Sm@rtClient view, 9-51

Brightness

- Set, 6-7, 9-10

Bulk storage, 1-10, 12-5

Burst interference, 12-8

Button

- Layout, 9-13
- Purpose, 9-13

Button action feedback, 9-3

**C**

Cable cross-section, 4-15

Cables, 3-2

Calibration

- Touch screen, 6-8

Calling

- Operator note: Touch panel unit, 9-5
- Operator note:keyboard device, 9-11
- Operator note:screen keyboard, 9-5
- Operator note:screen keyboard, 9-5
- Operator note:System function, 9-7
- Operator note:touch panel, 9-5, 9-6
- Remote control, 9-51
- Remote monitoring, 9-51

Cancel

- Key, 9-8

Capacity

- Alarm buffer, 1-6
- Backup battery, 12-6
- Memory, 1-5

CE approval, A-1

Certificate

- ESD, A-2

CF card, 1-10

Changing

- Battery, 11-2
- Language, 7-12

Character set

- Printer, 4-8

Cleaning

- Device, 11-1

Cleaning agents, 11-1

Clock

- Internal, 1-9
- Operation, 9-43
- Purpose, 9-43

Close

- Dialog, 9-11

Color display, 1-5, 12-5

Colors, 1-5, 12-5

Combo box

- Open, 9-9

Commissioning for the first time, 7-1

Communication, 1-8

- PLCs from other manufacturers, 1-9
- SIMATIC PLCs, 1-8

Communication options, 4-5

Compact Flash Card, 1-11, 12-5

Compatibility conflict, 7-2, 7-3

Compressing

- PU functions, 4-12

Conditions for use, 3-2

Conduction

- RF, 12-8

Configuration, 10-6

- Memory location, 7-7
- Of recipes, 10-6
- Source file, 7-7

Configuration computer

- Connecting, 4-13

Configuration phase, 1-4

Configuration software, 1-3, 1-5

Configuring

- Interface IF1B, 4-11

Conflict

- Compatibility, 7-2, 7-3

Connecting

- Configuration computer, 4-13
- External keyboard, 4-9
- HMI device, 4-4
- Mouse, 4-9
- PLC, 4-11
- Power supply, 4-15
- Printer, 4-7
- UPS, 4-14

Connection

- Electrical, 4-4
- Order, 4-4
- To configuration computer, 4-13
- To external keyboard, 4-9
- To mouse, 4-9
- To PLC, 4-11
- To printer:, 4-7

Contact discharge, 12-7

Control keys, 5-5

Control mode

- Remote control, 9-52
- Sm@rtClient view, 9-52

Conversion functions, 1-7

Copy  
 Recipe data record in Runtime, 10-15  
 create  
 Recipe record on the HMI device, 10-15  
 Create  
 Labeling strips, 5-8  
 Cross-section  
 Power supply cable, 4-15  
 CSV file, 10-5  
 C-Tick, A-1  
 CTRL  
 Key, 9-9  
 Cursor  
 Key, 5-6, 9-8  
 Cut-out  
 Installation, 12-5

## D

Data  
 Technical, 12-5  
 Data log  
 in Runtime, 8-5  
 Data loss, 7-16  
 Data mailbox  
 For recipes, 10-8  
 Data record  
 exporting, 10-18  
 importing, 10-18  
 reading, 10-17  
 Transfer, 10-17  
 Date, 6-5, 7-2  
 Date / time field  
 Behavior, 9-41  
 Keyboard control, 9-41, 9-42  
 Layout, 9-41  
 Mouse control, 9-42  
 Purpose, 9-41  
 Touch control, 9-41  
 Date and time  
 synchronizing, 6-5  
 Default setting  
 Printer, 6-12  
 Degree of protection, 1-2, 3-3, 12-5  
 Delete  
 Key, 9-8  
 deleting  
 Recipe data record in Runtime, 10-16  
 Depth  
 Installation, 12-5  
 Device data  
 Displaying, 6-10

Dialog  
 Closing, 9-11  
 Dim back-lighting  
 Screen, 6-13  
 Dimensions, 12-5  
 MP 370 12" Key, 12-4  
 MP 370 12" Touch, 12-1  
 MP 370 15" Touch, 12-3  
 Directives  
 EEC, 12-7  
 ESD, A-2  
 DirectKey, 9-2  
 Discharge  
 Static, 12-7  
 Display, 1-5  
 Set brightness, 6-7  
 DNS server, 6-18

## E

Editing, 10-5  
 Recipe data record in WinCC flexible, 10-5  
 Recipe record, 10-5  
 Electrostatic discharge  
 Precautions, A-2  
 EMC directives, 3-1  
 END  
 Key, 9-8  
 Enter  
 Key, 9-8  
 ENTER  
 Key, 9-8  
 ESC  
 Key, 9-8  
 ESC/P compatibility, 4-7  
 ESD, A-2  
 Handling, A-3  
 Measuring, A-3  
 Shipping, A-3  
 Ethernet, 6-17  
 Ethernet interface, 4-4  
 Assignment, 12-10  
 Ex Zone 2/22, A-1  
 Example  
 Network functions, 6-21  
 Exchange  
 Labeling strips, 5-7  
 exporting  
 Recipe, 10-18  
 Recipe record, 10-18  
 User data, 8-8  
 Extend  
 Memory, 1-10

External dimensions, 12-5

External keyboard  
Connecting, 4-9  
Operation, 5-9

## F

Features

MP 370, 1-5  
Multi Panels, 1-1

Flashing

LED, 5-4

FM approval, A-2

Foil

Labeling strips, 5-8

Forcing

Permissions in remote operation, 9-52

Format

Paper, 6-11

Front panel

Thickness, 3-3, 3-4

Front view

MP 370 12" Key, 12-4  
MP 370 12" Touch, 12-1  
MP 370 15" Touch, 12-3

Function keys, 1-5, 5-2

LED, 5-4

Functional scope, 1-5

## G

Gauge

Layout, 9-40  
Operation, 9-40  
Purpose, 9-40

General operation

Keyboard unit, 9-7  
Touch panel unit, 9-2

Global softkey, 5-4

Graphic I/O field

Purpose, 9-18

Ground connection, 4-4, 4-6

Grounding, 4-6

Grounding screw, 4-6

Group acknowledgement, 1-6, 9-8

## H

Hardware options, 1-9

Hazardous location, A-1

Help text, 1-7

Calling:keyboard device, 9-11  
calling:screen keyboard, 9-5  
Calling:system function, 9-7  
Calling:Touch panel, 9-5, 9-6  
viewing (key), 9-8

Hide

Screen keyboard, 9-5

High frequency radiation, 2-1

HMI device

Connecting, 4-4  
Name in the network, 6-5  
Recommissioning, 7-3  
remote control, 9-51  
remote monitoring, 9-51  
Transfer mode, 7-3

HOME

Key, 9-8

Housing, 12-5

## I

I/O field

Behavior, 9-16  
Keyboard control, 9-17  
Layout, 9-16  
Mouse control, 9-17  
Purpose, 9-16  
Touch control, 9-16

Icon, 5-4

Behavior, 9-54  
Purpose, 9-54

Immunity to interference

EMC directives, 3-1

importing

Recipe, 10-18  
Recipe record, 10-18  
User data, 8-8

Increase

Brightness, 6-7

Indicators, 12-5

information

General, 2-1  
Safety, 2-1

Input

Alphanumeric values:touch panel, 9-5  
Numeric values:touch panel, 9-5

Input of alphanumeric values

Touch panel unit, 9-5

Input of numeric values

Touch panel unit, 9-5

- Installation
    - Configuration computer, 4-13
    - External keyboard, 4-9
    - in 19 inch cabinets, 4-1
    - Keyboard unit, 4-1
    - Mechanical, 4-1
    - Mouse, 4-9
    - PLC, 4-11
    - Printer, 4-7
    - Touch panel unit, 4-2
  - Installation conditions, 3-3
  - Installation cut-out, 12-5
    - Keyboard unit, 3-4
    - MP 370 12 inch touch panel unit, 3-4
    - MP 370 15 inch touch panel unit, 3-4
  - Installation depth, 12-5
  - Installation dimensions
    - 19 inch cabinets, 4-1
  - Installation location, 1-2, 3-3
  - Installation position, 12-7
  - Interface assignments, 12-8
  - Interface IF1A
    - Assignment, 12-8
  - Interface IF1B
    - Assignment, 12-9
  - Interface IF2
    - Assignment, 12-9
  - Interfaces, 1-5
    - Configure 1F1B, 4-11
    - IF1A, 4-11
    - IF1B, 4-11
    - IF2, 4-13
  - Internet Explorer, 1-12
  - Irradiation
    - RF, 12-7
- K**
- Key pads, 5-2
  - Keyboard, 1-5, 12-6
    - Connecting, 4-9
  - Keyboard control
    - Date / time field, 9-41, 9-42
    - I/O field, 9-17
  - Keyboard layers, 9-6
  - Keys
    - Remote control, 9-53
- L**
- Labeling
    - Softkey, 5-6
  - Labeling strips, 4-1
    - Exchange, 5-7
    - printing, 5-8
    - Template file, 5-8
  - Landscape format
    - Printer, 6-11
  - Language
    - Set, 7-12
  - Language switching, 1-8, 7-12, 9-1
  - Layout
    - Alarm view, 9-23
    - Bar, 9-34
    - Button, 9-13
    - Gauge, 9-40
    - I/O field, 9-16
    - Recipe view, 9-28
    - Simple alarm view, 9-26
    - Simple recipe view, 9-31
    - Simple user view, 9-46
    - Slider control, 9-38
    - Sm@rtClient view, 9-51
    - Status force, 9-48
    - Switch, 9-14
    - Trend view, 9-35
    - User view, 9-44
  - LCD type, 12-5
  - LED control, 5-4, 8-9
  - Length
    - Alarm text, 1-6
  - Light emitting diode
    - Acknowledge, 9-8
    - Help text, 9-8
    - Softkey, 5-4
    - Toggle, 9-8
  - Limit value monitoring, 1-7
  - Lines, 3-2
  - Literature, 1-5
  - Lithium battery, 12-6
    - Warning, 11-3
  - Load
    - Project data, 7-1
    - Recipe data record in Runtime, 10-15
  - Loader, 6-1
    - Password protection, 6-2
  - Local function keys, 5-4
  - Log
    - in Runtime, 8-3
    - Memory options, 8-4
  - Logging, 1-7
    - Scope of alarm logging, 8-4
  - Log-off time
    - exporting/importing, 8-8
    - in Runtime, 8-8

- M**
  - Maintenance, 11-1
  - Manual transfer, 7-3
  - Margin
    - Printer, 6-12
  - Mechanical installation, 4-1
  - Membrane keyboard, 1-5, 12-6
  - Memory, 1-5
  - Memory card, 1-10
  - Memory extension, 1-5
  - Memory location
    - Project file, 7-7
  - Menu bar
    - Enable, 9-11
  - Modal dialogs, 7-4
  - Mode
    - Printer, 6-11
  - modify
    - Recipe data record in Runtime, 10-15
  - Modifying recipe structures, 10-19
  - Monitoring mode
    - Sm@rtClient view, 9-52
  - Mouse
    - Connecting, 4-9
    - Operation, 5-9
  - Mouse control
    - Date / time field, 9-42
    - I/O field, 9-17
  - Mouse pointer, 5-9
  - MPI address
    - Transfer mode, 7-5
  - MPI transfer, 7-6
  - Multi Panels, 1-1
  - Multifunctional platform, 1-1
  - Multiple key operation, 9-1
- N**
  - Navigating
    - Operating system, 9-10
  - Network connection, 12-7
  - Noise immunity, 12-7, 12-8
  - Norms, 12-7
- Number**
  - Alarms, 1-5
  - Colors (display), 12-5
  - Data records, 1-7
  - Fields per screen, 1-6
  - Graphics lists, 1-7
  - Languages, 1-8
  - Recipes, 1-7
  - Scripts, 1-8
  - Tags per screen, 1-6
  - Text lists, 1-7
  - User, 1-7
- Numeric keyboard assignment, 9-8
- Numeric screen keyboard, 9-5
- O**
  - OEM applications, 6-15
    - Memory requirements, 6-15
  - Offices, iii
  - Offline test, 7-9
  - Online test, 7-9
  - OPC, 1-8
  - Open
    - Combo box, 9-9
    - Tab, 9-11
    - Task Manager, 9-10
    - Windows CE Start menu, 9-10
  - Operating a keyboard device, 9-7
  - Operating mode
    - Changing, 7-13
    - Offline mode, 7-13
    - Online mode, 7-13
    - Transfer mode, 7-13
  - Operating mode switchover, 7-9
  - Operating recipes
    - Copying a recipe data record, 10-15
    - Creating recipe records, 10-15
    - Data record transfer, 10-17
    - Delete recipe data record, 10-16
    - Exporting data records, 10-18
    - Import a data record, 10-18
    - Load recipe data record, 10-15
    - Modify recipe record, 10-15
    - Modifying the recipe structure, 10-19
    - Read recipe data record, 10-17
    - Synchronizing recipe tags, 10-16
  - Operating system, 1-1, 1-5, 12-5
    - Navigation, 9-10
    - Updating, 7-18
  - Operating the touch panel (TP), 9-2

- Operation
    - Bar, 9-34
    - Clock, 9-43
    - Gauge, 9-40
    - Keyboard unit, 9-7
    - Touch objects, 9-2
    - Touch panel unit, 9-2
  - Operator controls
    - Alarm view, 9-24
    - Recipe view, 9-29
    - Simple alarm view, 9-27
    - Simple recipe view, 9-32
    - Status force, 9-49
    - Trend view, 9-35
  - Optimization
    - Brightness, 6-7
  - Option
    - Back transfer, 7-23
    - Transfer, 7-22
  - Options
    - Backup battery, 1-9
    - CF card, 1-10
    - Memory card, 1-10
    - PC card, 1-10
  - Order
    - The connections, 4-4
  - Overheating, 3-4
  - Overview, 1-1, 1-5
- P**
- Page margin
    - Printer, 6-12
  - Paper size, 6-11
  - Password
    - exporting/importing, 8-8
    - in Runtime, 8-7
  - Path specification
    - Project file, 7-7
  - PC
    - Connecting, 4-13
  - PC card, 1-10, 1-11, 12-5
  - PCL compatibility, 4-8
  - PE connection, 4-4
  - Permission
    - forcing (remote operation), 9-52
  - PG
    - Connecting, 4-13
  - PG interface, 4-11
  - Pin assignment, 12-8
  - Pin plug connector, 4-15
  - Plan view
    - MP 370 12" Key, 12-4
    - MP 370 12" Touch, 12-1
    - MP 370 15" Touch, 12-3
  - PLC
    - Connecting, 4-11
  - Plug connections, 3-2
  - Plug-in terminal block, 4-15
  - Port
    - Printer, 6-11
  - Portrait format
    - Printer, 6-11
  - Power cables, 3-2
  - Power consumption, 12-6
  - Power supply, 4-4, 4-15, 12-6
  - Print functions, 1-7
  - Print quality
    - Set, 6-11
  - Printer
    - Connecting, 4-7
    - Set, 6-10
  - printing
    - Report, 8-5
    - Runtime, 8-8
    - Screen, 8-8
  - Process running phase, 1-4
  - Processor type, 1-5, 12-5
  - Product category, 1-1
  - PROFIBUS DP, 4-11
  - Profiles, 4-1
  - Programming voltage, 1-11
  - Project
    - Back transfer, 7-10
    - Replace, 7-3
    - Test, 7-9
    - Test offline, 7-9
    - Test online, 7-10
  - Project data
    - Load, 7-1
  - ProSave, 7-14
    - Backup, 7-15
    - Integrated, 7-14
    - Restore, 7-17
    - Stand-alone, 7-14
  - PU functions, 1-8
  - Pulse modulation, 12-7

Purpose

- Alarm indicator, 9-22
- Alarm view, 9-23
- Bar, 9-34
- Button, 9-13
- Clock, 9-43
- Gauge, 9-40
- I/O field, 9-16
- Icon, 9-54
- Recipe view, 9-28
- Simple alarm view, 9-25
- Simple recipe view, 9-31
- Simple user view, 9-46
- Slider control, 9-38
- Sm@rtClient view, 9-51
- Status force, 9-48
- Switch, 9-14
- Trend view, 9-35

**Q**

Quality

- Graphic printing, 6-11

**R**

- Radio interference, 12-8
- Radio interference level, 12-8
- Rated voltage, 12-6
- Recipe, 10-3, 10-4
  - Basic principles, 10-3
  - Configuration options, 10-6
  - Configuration settings, 10-6
  - Data record, 10-4
  - Design, 10-3
  - Display in Runtime, 10-1, 10-12
  - exporting, 10-18
  - importing, 10-18
- Recipe record, 10-4
  - Copy, 10-15
  - Create on the HMI device, 10-15
  - deleting, 10-16
  - Design, 10-3
  - Editing in WinCC flexible, 10-5
  - exporting, 10-18
  - importing, 10-18
  - Load, 10-15
  - modify, 10-15
  - synchronizing, 10-16
  - Transfer, 10-5
  - Transfer options, 10-5
- Recipe screen, 10-13
  - Overview, 10-13

Recipe view, 10-12

- Behavior with screen change, 9-28, 10-14
- Layout, 9-28
- Operation with function keys, 10-14
- Operator controls, 9-29
- Overview, 10-12
- Purpose, 9-28

Recipes, 1-7

Recommissioning

- HMI device, 7-3

Reduce

- Brightness, 6-8

Regional setting, 6-13

Relative humidity, 12-7

Remote control

- calling, 9-51
- Forcing permission, 9-52
- of HMI devices, 9-51
- Stop, 9-52

Remote monitoring

- calling, 9-51
- of HMI devices, 9-51
- Stop, 9-52

Report

- in Runtime, 8-5
- printing, 8-5

Representatives, iii

Resolution

- Indicators, 1-5, 12-5

Restore, 7-16

Reverse poling protection, 4-15

RF conduction, 12-8

RF irradiation, 12-7

RJ45 plug, 12-10

RTS signal, 4-11

Runtime

- Language switching, 9-1
- Multiple key operation, 9-1
- Operation, 9-1
- Pictograms, 9-2

Runtime software, 7-7

- Load, 7-1

**S**

Safety, 1-7

- in Runtime, 8-7

Safety notes

- High frequency radiation, 2-1
- Work on the cabinet, 2-1

Scheduler, 1-8

- Screen, 12-5
  - printing, 8-8
  - Set brightness, 6-7, 9-10
  - Templates, 9-2
- Screen change, 5-4
- Screen diagonals, 1-5
- Screen keyboard, 9-4
  - Alphanumeric, 9-5
  - Numeric, 9-5
  - Set, 6-6
- Screen objects, 1-6
  - in Runtime, overview, 8-1
- Screen objects in Runtime
  - Overview, 8-1
- Screensaver, 6-13
- Screw type clamps, 4-2
- Scripts, 1-8
- Scrolling back
  - Key, 9-8
- Scrolling up
  - Key, 9-8
- Seal, 3-3, 4-3
- Securing, 4-1
  - Touch panel unit, 4-2
- Selection
  - all, 9-10
- Serial printer, 4-8
- Service
  - In the Internet, iv
- Service life
  - Backup battery, 11-2
- Servicing, 11-1
- Set up
  - Network, 6-17
  - Printer, 6-10
- Settings
  - Brightness, 6-7, 9-10
  - Contrast, 6-7
  - Date/time, 6-5
  - Language, 7-12
  - Network, 6-6
  - Printer, 6-10
  - Regional, 6-13
  - Save, 6-9
  - Screen keyboard, 6-6
  - Touch calibration, 6-7, 6-8
  - Volume, 6-17
- SHIFT
  - Key, 9-8
- Shift layer
  - Screen keyboard, 9-6
- Shift+Alt-Gr layer
  - Screen keyboard, 9-6
- Shock loading, 12-7
- Side view
  - MP 370 12" Key, 12-4
  - MP 370 12" Touch, 12-1
  - MP 370 15" Touch, 12-3
- Signal lines, 3-2
- Signal tone, 6-17
- SIMATIC 500/505 DP, 1-8
- SIMATIC 500/505 serial, 1-8
- SIMATIC HMI HTTP Protocol, 1-8
- SIMATIC S5 AS511, 1-8
- SIMATIC S5 DP, 1-8
- SIMATIC S7-200, 1-8
- SIMATIC S7-300/400, 1-8
- SIMATIC WinAC, 1-8
- SIMOTION, 1-8
- Simple alarm view
  - Layout, 9-26
  - Operator controls, 9-27
  - Purpose, 9-25
- Simple recipe view
  - Behavior, 9-32
  - Layout, 9-31
  - Operator controls, 9-32
  - Purpose, 9-31
- Simple user view
  - Layout, 9-46
  - Purpose, 9-46
- Size
  - Paper, 6-11
- Slider control
  - Layout, 9-38
  - Purpose, 9-38
- Slot A, 1-10
- Slot B, 1-10
- Sm@rtClient view
  - Behavior, 9-51
  - Control mode, 9-52
  - Layout, 9-51
  - Monitoring mode, 9-52
  - Purpose, 9-51
- Softkey, 5-4
  - Labeling, 5-6
  - Remote control, 9-53
- Softkeys, 1-5
- Software, 12-5
- Software options, 1-12
- Source file
  - Memory location, 7-7
- Special characters
  - Key, 9-9
- Stand-alone ProSave
  - Backup, 7-15
- Standard cables, 4-13

Standard layer  
  Screen keyboard, 9-6  
Start screen, 7-2  
Start up, 7-1  
Static discharge, 12-7  
Status force  
  Layout, 9-48  
  Operator controls, 9-49  
  Purpose, 9-48  
Stop  
  Remote control and monitoring, 9-52  
Storage location  
  Project file, 7-7  
  Runtime software, 7-7  
  Source file, 7-7  
Sub-D plug, 12-9  
Sub-D socket, 12-8, 12-9  
Sunlight, 3-4  
Supply source  
  Backup battery, 11-2  
Support  
  In the Internet, iv  
Surge coupling, 12-8  
Switch  
  For 1F1B interface, 4-11  
  Layout, 9-14  
  Purpose, 9-14  
Switch off  
  Back-lighting, 6-13  
  Power supply, 1-12  
Switch settings  
  Interface IF1B, 4-11  
Symbolic I/O field  
  Purpose, 9-20  
Synchronization  
  With controller, 10-8  
synchronizing, 6-5  
Synchronizing  
  Recipe record, 10-16  
Synchronizing recipe tags, 10-16  
System alarms, A-4  
  Meaning, A-4  
  Parameters, A-4  
System function, 10-5  
  to transfer of recipe data records, 10-5  
System keys, 1-5, 5-3, 5-5  
System settings, 6-2

## T

TAB  
  Key, 9-8

Tabulator  
  Key, 9-8  
Tags  
  in Runtime, 8-3  
Task Manager, 9-10  
Technical specifications, 12-5  
Technical Support, iv  
TeleService, 1-1  
Test  
  Network, 6-20  
  Project, 7-9  
Thickness  
  Front panel, 3-3, 3-4  
Time, 6-5, 7-2  
Time zone, 6-5  
Toggle  
  Key, 9-8  
Torque, 4-3  
Touch control  
  Date / time field, 9-41  
  I/O field, 9-16  
Touch objects  
  operating, 9-2  
Touch screen  
  Calibration, 6-8  
Trademark, iii  
Training center, iv  
Transfer, 10-5  
  Of recipe data records, 10-5  
  Options, 7-5  
  Start manually, 7-3  
  TeleService, 1-1  
Transfer mode, 9-10  
Transients, 12-6  
Trend view  
  Layout, 9-35  
  Operator controls, 9-35  
  Purpose, 9-35

## U

UL approval, A-1  
Unit dimensions  
  MP 370 12" Key, 12-4  
  MP 370 12" Touch, 12-1  
  MP 370 15" Touch, 12-3  
Update operating system  
  With Booting, 7-19  
  Without Booting, 7-19  
Updating  
  Date/time, 7-2  
  Operating system, 7-18  
UPS, 6-16

- USB hub, 4-8, 4-10
- USB interface, 4-9
  - Assignment, 12-10
- USB keyboard, 5-9
- USB mouse, 5-9
- Use with additional measures, 3-2
- User
  - in Runtime, 8-7
  - Number, 1-7
- User data
  - exporting/importing, 8-8
- User group
  - in Runtime, 8-7
- User view, 9-44
  - Export, 9-44
  - Import, 9-44
  - Layout, 9-44
  - Purpose, 9-44

## V

- VBScript, 1-8
- Ventilation slits, 3-4
- Vibration, 12-7
- Visual feedback, 9-3

## W

- Weight, 12-5
- WinCC flexible, 1-3
  - Backup, 7-16
  - Restore, 7-17
- Windows CE, 1-1, 6-2, 12-5
- WINS server, 6-18
- Work on the cabinet, 2-1
- Working memory, 12-5

